

The true method of dieting horses. Containing many curious and useful observations concerning their marks, colour and external shape; their temper and instinct; and how they are to be governed, so as to prevent accidents and diseases. The proper method of feeding suited to their age, strength and constitution ... Under which is likewise contain'd the right and proper exercise ... As also observations concerning the right ordering of troop horses, with a discourse of breeding, founded on the Duke of Newcastle's short method / [W. Gibson].

Contributors

Gibson, W. 1680?-1750.

Solleysel, Jacques de, 1617-1680.

Newcastle, William Cavendish, Duke of, 1592-1676.

Publication/Creation

London : Printed for John Osborn and Tho. Longman, 1726.

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/v6hh36mv>

License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
[E library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:Elibrary@wellcomecollection.org)
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



M. xx

18/8

24,814/B

Herbert Greensmith Beard

Lincoln.

Wm. B. Davis



Guard THE *Roots* Ho,
TRUE METHOD
OF DIETING
HORSES.

CONTAINING

Many Curious and Useful Observations concerning their Marks, Colour and External Shape; their Temper and Instinct; and how they are to be governed, so as to prevent Accidents and Diseases.

The proper Method of Feeding suited to their Age, Strength and Constitution; wherein the pernicious Customs, which have obtain'd among many ignorant Grooms and other Pretenders to Horsemanship, are exposed, and their Errors carefully amended. Under which is likewise contain'd the Right and Proper Exercise, necessary not only in the above-mentioned respects, but apply'd to the most usual Services required of Horses, whether those for Travelling and Labour, those for the Manage, or those for Pleasure.

AS ALSO

Observations concerning the right ordering of Troop-Horses, with a Discourse of Breeding, founded on the Duke of Newcastle's short Method; very necessary for the improving our Breed, and raising a Beautiful and Useful Race of Horses.

By *W. GIBSON*.

The SECOND EDITION, Corrected.

L O N D O N:

Printed for JOHN OSBORN and THO. LONGMAN,
at the Ship in Pater-Noster-Row, 1726.





TO the HONOURABLE

Col. Charles Churchill,

Governor of Chelsea-College, &c.

S I R,



W H E N I considered the many Defects and Errors that are in most Authors, concerning the Dieting of Horses, and of how much Importance it is to all Persons who are any ways interested in those Creatures, to be more or less acquainted with the Means of their Preservation; I judg'd I could not do a better and more needful Service in the Way of Horsemanship, than to lay down some Rules and Instructions, which should teach the true Order of Diet, and other Requisites belonging to the Keeper's Office. And as I thought a Treatise of this Kind might not be unacceptable, so I undertook it with the greater Pleasure, because

I was in Hopes it might be of some Benefit to those who have a Command in the Horse or Dragoon Service. It is the only Return I am able to make, in Remembrance of the great Civilities I met with while I was among the latter, under Your Command. And it is from the Sense of my Duty to You in particular, that it presumes to come forth under Your Patronage.

No one can be more sensible than I am how ready you are upon all Occasions to promote any thing which aims at the Publick Good. I dare not say how far this may plead the Merit of being useful ; but if it should, in any respect, be able to answer the End proposed by it, I must confess, the Acknowledgment is chiefly due to You since it was from the great Esteem I had of Your Judgment, that I first ventured to engage in the Subject of Horsemanship. You was sensible of the Loss we daily sustain'd, for want of better Helps in the *Farriers* Province. This is founded on the same Principles ; and I need not acquaint You, that there are many Circumstances required in a right ordered Diet, which are difficult to be obtained, unless we had more rational Guides, than any are yet in the Publick.

Whatever Success this new Attempt may meet with, I could not forbear making
king

king an Offer of it to You, not only as an Acknowledgment of the many Personal Obligations You have laid upon me, but as a Regard which is due to Your Publick Merit. Your Deportment in every Station must be acknowledged truly that of a Gentleman, and in all respects becoming a Faithful Representative of Your Country, and the honourable Profession of a Soldier. But in that Capacity You have indeed deserved the Esteem of all who are desirous of the Publick Safety, as You have given sufficient Proofs that there is none more qualify'd to advance the Credit and Reputation of our Troops: And as you never yet declined any Noble and Worthy Enterprize in the Service of Your Country, however hazardous; so it will appear to the World, when the Publick Exigencies shall require Your further Assistance in a more advanced Age and Station, that You will be no less wanting to maintain our Ancient Military Glory.

This we may the more reasonably expect from You, as You are in an eminent Degree possess'd of those Qualifications which are suited to the noblest Actions; but Your compassionate Desire of doing Good is truly remarkable. Courage without Compassion is at best but Brutal, and when accompany'd with Power, often degenerates into a Kind of Tyranny; but

a well regulated Courage, tempered with Humanity, renders those who are invested with Command, the fit Asserters of the common Rights of Mankind : And in their more private Capacity deservedly beloved and esteemed by all.

It is not the least of Your Happiness, that You have already gain'd so much on the Affections of Your Countrymen, and particularly of those who know You most. But they who have serv'd under you in any Station, will, with one Voice, acknowledge how much they are indebted to You. Where-ever You met with proper Objects, they could not be so forward to ask Favours, as You was to grant them : And when these were immediately out of your own Power, You was never wanting to excite others to do them. For my own part, I was cast upon You an utter Stranger, yet such was Your Care and generous Concern for me at all times, that I cannot sufficiently express my Gratitude. All that I am able to do, is only to testify in the most publick Manner, how much

I am, S I R,

Your most Devoted, and

Most Obliged humble Servant,

WILLIAM GIBSON.



P R E F A C E.



HERE are Two great Ends obtain'd by the Knowledge of Physick: The one to restore Health when it is wanting; and the other, to preserve the Body in a good State, by preventing the manifold Accidents whereunto it is exposed, both from Things External and Things Internal. The first of these, so far as relates to the Cure of Horses, has already been accomplished; and in what Manner, the Publick is sufficiently acquainted. What we now offer concerning the right Ordering of the Diet and Feeding of Horses, as it is a Work of no less Use and Importance, so we thought it necessary to bestow a distinct Treatise upon it.

Nothing of this Kind has been hitherto professedly attempted in our Language, excepting by Blundevile, who has only copied

from *Ancient Writers* and the *Italians*, who were indeed the most experienced *Horsemen* of the Age he lived in, but neither well instructed in their *Diseases*, nor in the true *Means* of their *Preservation*. And what has been since essay'd by others on the same Subject, is for the most part so absurd, or intermixed with other Matters, that we judge their Performances, in a great Measure, *Fruitless* and of no Account.

Those who lay down *Rules* for the *Preservation* of *Horses* in a good State of *Health*, ought to be fully acquainted with the *Structure* and *Mechanism* of their *Bodies*, as well as the *Things* from whence the *Animal Body* may receive *Hurt* or *Benefit*; upon which all is indeed founded: And when this is once fairly stated, it cannot be difficult for *Persons* even of common *Understanding* to make the *Application* aright. This is the *Design* of the following *Treatise*, wherein we have not omitted any Thing that we judge necessary for the *Preservation* of our *Horses*, in whatsoever *Service* they be employed, whether those for *Pleasure*, or those for *Business*.

All the *Accidents* that are usual in the different *Services* required of them, and according to the different *Periods* of their *Age*, or according to their different *Tempers* and *Constitutions*, are taken Notice of at more
Length

Length than has ever been done by others. The Errors of their Feeding and Exercise, with the true Method to prevent the Mischiefs arising from thence, are here also laid down: And many ridiculous and irrational Methods among ignorant Grooms, and other Persons entrusted with the Care and Management of our Horses, such as are built upon no right Foundation, but have obtain'd by meer Rote and Custom, are here exposed, and their Errors carefully amended.

*We have also added some Directions concerning the right Ordering of Troop-Horses, a Thing not hitherto attempted by any Author: With a Discourse of Breeding, founded on the Duke of Newcastle's short Method; where many Things from that Nobleman's Experience are more clearly demonstrated, and some useful Circumstances added, which we hope may be of Service to those who take Delight in raising a Breed of fine Horses, which at this time is very much wanting: So that by this, and the other Two Volumes already published, we have fully discharged our Promise to the Publick; having omitted nothing that we thought necessary to the Cure and Preservation of our Horses. And those who shall carefully follow our Rules and Directions, may manage them so as to stand in little Need of Physick; for unless it be external Accidents, or the Injuries that
happen*

happen from an infected Air, all other Sicknesses, of whatever Kind, may, in great Measure, be prevented by such an OEconomy as is here prescribed.

I have only to add, that the favourable Reception our Farrier's Guide and Dispensatory have met with, will make sufficient Way for this, which I hope will be found of no less Benefit to all Lovers of Horses.

BOOKS wrote by the same Author, and Printed for J. Osborn and T. Longman, at the Ship in Pater-Noster-Row.

THE FARRIER'S NEW GUIDE: Containing, First, The Anatomy of a Horse; being an exact and compendious Description of all his Parts, with their Actions and Uses; illustrated with Figures curiously engraven on Copper-Plates. Secondly, An Account of all the Diseases incident to Horses, with their Signs, Causes, and Method of Cure; wherein many Defects in the Farriers Practice are now carefully supply'd; their Errors expos'd and amended, and the Art greatly improv'd and advanced, according to the latest Discoveries. The whole interspers'd with many curious and useful Observations concerning Feeding and Exercise, &c. By W. Gibson. 2d Edition. 8vo.

The FARRIER'S DISPENSATORY: In three Parts; containing, I. A Description of the Medicinal Simples, commonly made Use of in the Diseases of HORSES, with their Virtues and Manner of Operation, distributed into proper Classes, &c. II. The Preparations of Simples, Vegetable, Animal, and Mineral; with an Explanation of the most usual Terms, both in the Chymical and Galenical Pharmacy. III. A Number of Useful Compositions and Receipts. suited to the Cure of all Diseases, never before published; as also those of greatest Account from Solleyell Ruini Blundevill, and other most celebrated Authors, digested under their proper Heads of Powders, Balls, Drinks, Ointments, Charges, &c. The proper Method of compounding and making them. With many other useful Observations and Improvements, tending to their Right Administration. To which is also added, A compleat Index of all the Medicines contained in the Book, whether Simple or Compound, with a Table of Diseases pointing to the Remedies proper in each Malady. By the same Author. 8vo.

The following LETTER from Sir William
Hope to the Author, was Published at
the Desire of the Bookseller.

S I R,



Received with great Satisfaction,
your *Farrier's Dispensatory*, in
the Dedication of which you
was pleased to pass a Compli-
ment upon me, I am sensible I do not
deserve.

Since the Works of my old Riding-Mas-
ter the Sieur *De Solleysell* were to be im-
proved, they could not have fallen into a
more judicious Hand. And as in your
Farrier's New Guide, and this *New Dispen-
satory*, you have shewn your Skill and In-
genious Method of Collection, so I doubt
not but your Candor and Ingenuity will
no less appear in your Third Volume when
published; for then I believe there needs
be nothing more on the Subject. And I may
truly venture to say of you, what a *French*
Person of Quality once said of the great
Duke of *Newcastle*, when he saw him ride
one of his finest managed Horses, *Mon-
seigneur, la Planche est tirée*, The Bridge
is now drawn up, and there is none to
come after you.

If Farriers and Gentlemen would bestow
but half that Pains in studying your useful
Books,

Books, which you have taken to perfect them, we should have finer Stables of Horses, more regularly kept, and more skilful *Farriers* to consult with for their Cure, than (I am sorry to say it) for the most part we have.

You have indeed writ so Learnedly upon the Subject, and so much like a Physician, that I am afraid they are only the more Expert and Judicious who can reap the wish'd-for Benefit from your Labours: But be that as it will, I am mighty well pleased that I can truly say, *Britain* has now a GIBSON, as *France* had formerly a SOLLEYSSELL. And could that noble and useful Creature be endow'd with the Faculty of Speech, as he is no doubt with a Degree of Reason, his first Exerting it would certainly be, to offer his thankful Acknowledgment to you, for your Singular and Learned Endeavours for his continual Health and Preservation.

Go on, *Sir*, in your laudable Design; and if you think I have done you Justice in this, I leave it to your Disposal: For I never give a Character, but what I can avow in the most publick Manner.

I am,

SIR,

Edinburgh, Decem-
ber 10. 1720.

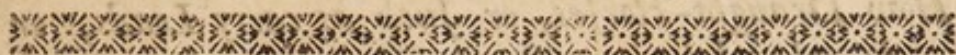
Your much obliged,

Humble Servant,

WILL. HOPE.



THE CONTENTS.



CHAP. I.

OF the outward Configuration, Shape, and Colour of Horses, Page 1

CHAP. II.

Of the Instinct and Sagacity of Horses, with some Considerations concerning their various Tempers and Inclinations, p. 20

CHAP. III.

Of Habits ; and how all Horses are guided more or less thereby : The Manner how ill Habits are induced, with the proper Means to avoid them, p. 37

CHAP. IV.

Of Food, Exercise, and Rest, Sleeping and Watching ; and the other Non-Naturals, p. 49

CHAP. V.

Of the Food of Horses, and the Vices some are addicted to in Feeding, p. 66

CHAP. VI.

Of the Stable, and Offices belonging thereunto. p. 88

CHAP.

THE CONTENTS.

CHAP. VII.

The Method of ordering Horses when they rest, and stand constantly at hard Meat, p. 94

CHAP. VIII.

The Order of Dieting Horses when they travel, p. 120

CHAP. IX.

How Draught-Horses, or such as carry Loads, or do other laborious Service, ought to be ordered, p. 154

CHAP. X.

Concerning the Diet of Horses while in the Manage, and the Accidents to which they are exposed; with the Method to prevent them, p. 158

CHAP. XI.

Observations concerning the Diet and Exercise of Running Horses, p. 164

CHAP. XII.

Of Horses at Grass, p. 179

CHAP. XIII.

Concerning the Diet and Exercise of Troop-Horses, p. 190

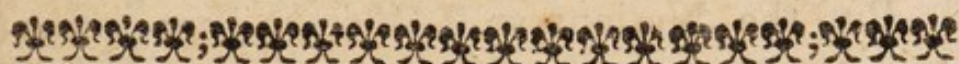
CHAP. XIV.

Observations concerning Breeding, and the Manner of raising a beautiful and useful Race of Horses, founded on the Duke of Newcastle's Method, p. 210

THE



THE
TRUE METHOD
OF DIETING
HORSES, &c.



CHAP. I.

*Of the outward Configuration, Shape, and
Colour of Horses.*



THE Colour of a Horse being that Colour which first strikes the Eye, I shall therefore begin with some Observations of what is the most worthy to be noted by every good Horseman in that Particular. It is manifest, all who have hitherto writ on the Subject of Horsemanship, have attributed a great deal to the Colour; but the Want of a thorow Knowledge in such Matters, has been the Occasion of a great many Defects and Errors in those Writers; and the Duke of Newcastle is the only one who has got the better of Prejudice; tho', as most have been too much led

The Dieting of Horses.

led by Custom, in what relates to Colour, that noble Person has perhaps gone too far towards the other Extreme, and seems seldom to regard the Colour of a Horse in any other View than as it contributes to his Beauty or Ugliness. But it is certain, there may be some Indications taken, not only from the Colour of a Horse, but also from some particular Marks; especially from the first, as well as from the Complexions of Men: And this is still to be the more regarded, as it has passed the Observation and Experience of the most Judicious in all Ages, who have constantly agreed, that some Colours betoken Horses to be more durable and lasting than others, as well as more beautiful.

But the Notions most Writers have entertain'd concerning the different Colour of Horses depending upon the Predominancy of their Humours, is very absurd, tho' it is as old as *Aristotle*, and can only serve to lead People into Error. From thence they have attributed White to *Phlegm*, Black to *Melancholy*, the Sorrel to *Bile* or *Choler*, and the Bay to *Blood*. From whence they have also concluded, that those Horses are the best that participate of an even and uniform Mixture of all those Colours, which denote an Equality of the said Humours; and these are, according to *Solleysell*, and some of our best Authors, the *Dappled Grey*, the Dark or *Burnt Sorrel*, the *Dark* and *Brown Bay*, and *Dappled Bay*, the *Roan* with a dark Head, and the *Flea-bitten* or *Starlin* Colour.

There is, without doubt, in all Animal Bodies, such Humours as have been distinguish'd by those Appellations; but how far these predomine or influence them, we are very much at a loss to know; or whether they can be rightly apply'd,

apply'd, as to Colour in Horses, is altogether a Mystery, since the same does not hold any Correspondence with other Animals; for there seems to be no just Reason, why a Red Sorrel Horse should be of a Cholerick Constitution, more than a Red Cow; or that a Black Horse should participate more of the Melancholy than a Black Dog, or a Black Ox. But if we could shake off Prejudice, and the excessive Fondness for Custom, we might soon see the Absurdity of those refined, but empty Speculations, which were deservedly exposed by the Duke of Newcastle, notwithstanding he liv'd in an Age when those Prepossessions were much regarded.

It is certain, the Goodness or Badness of Horses depends upon something we are in a great Measure ignorant of; but so far as may be learn'd from the most diligent Enquiries, there seems to be a great deal owing to the Structure and Configuration of all the component Parts and Vessels, as also on the Liquids which flow in them. A heavy and unactive Blood may, no doubt, dispose a Horse, or any other Animal, to be dull and sluggish; as, on the other hand, a brisk, lively Blood may dispose him to be lively and active, and the Habit and Disposition of the Blood depends, in a great measure, upon the Structure of the solid Parts: But how far the Colour betokens the one or the other, no one can certainly determine. Yet we know by Experience, that White and Dun Horses, as also those which are Jet Black, and such as approach the nearest to those Colours, are commonly faint and washy; as, on the other hand, those Colours which were named before, *viz.* the Dappled Grey, the Dark or Burnt Sorrel, &c. and such as approach
B the

The Dieting of Horses.

the nearest to them, are ordinarily the best; but all this may be better accounted for, than by having recourse to the Humours, as those last mentioned Colours are a Kind of Medium between the Two Extremes of Light and Dark, and may therefore denote a more exact Temperature both in the Fluids and Solids, than when the Colour of a Horse approaches too far to the one or the other; tho' this is not always to be depended upon.

Marks.

This Argument will hold good, inasmuch as we judge there may be some Congruity between the external Complexion of all Animals, and their internal Make, as also with Respect to the Marks and Signatures of Nature, tho' we cannot be assured in what Particulars that Agreement lies, any farther than what has been owing to the Experience and Observation of past Ages; and therefore, besides what has been observed as to Colour, the best Horsemen have also ascribed a great deal to the external Marks of Horses, as some of our *Physiognomists* have done to the Spots and Moles on the human Body. But we find ourselves so often deceived in those Things, that no reasonable Person ought to depend upon them without Trial; for if we make a strict Examination in what relates to the Marks and Colour of Horses, we shall find that these are in common with that Variety and Distinction, which is observable in all the other Works of Nature; and the Regard which is at this Day paid to them, is, in a great measure, owing to the Ignorance and Superstition of former Ages.

The Marks which have been the most universally approved or disliked, are taken Notice of by all Authors; but the Reasoning which is
built

built upon them, is very absurd and ridiculous; and therefore we shall but just name them, because it is necessary for all Horsemen to know which Horses are esteem'd the best mark'd, and which not. It is not amiss here also to observe, that the most approved Marks are also the most becoming and beautiful; as, on the other hand, the bad are oftentimes a Deformity, and give an unpleasant Aspect to some Horses, which are otherwise not disagreeable. To begin with the Feet, as these are commonly the first taken notice of in the Examination of a Horse.

A Horse is said to be well mark'd, who has a White Fore-foot on the far Side, a White hinder Foot on the near Side, or both his hinder Feet White; and those are accounted ill mark'd, which have the Fore-foot on the near Side White, a White hinder Foot on the far Side, or both the Fore-feet White. Those are likewise said to be ill mark'd, which have both Fore and Hinder Feet on one Side White; as also those which are cross-traversed, having the Fore-foot on the near Side, and Hinder Foot on the far Side, or the Fore Foot on the far Side, and Hinder Foot on the near Side White. But when the White rises too high upon the Pastern and Shank, it is for the most part disliked. When it happens to be on all the Four Feet, or only before or behind, rising pretty high, the Horse is then said to be hosed, and such Horses are often faulty; as are also many of those which have too much White on any Part of their Body, which is not mixed or chaffered with Hairs of the Horse's Colour.

The Marks most approved or disliked.

We have taken notice, that White and Dun are Colours which denote Faintness and Debility,

ty, as also those which approach the nearest to them. This Observation is very ancient, and has been the most certain of any, in what relates to Colour. Horses of those Colours have ordinarily their Skins very white and fair underneath the Hair, which must, no doubt, be the most delicate and tender: But yet with good keeping, some of those even prove very serviceable: And in this Respect it is much the same as among Men, and other Animals, where we find the most delicate and tender Constitutions not always the worst; for albeit such are commonly the most susceptible of outward Impressions, and may therefore be easily injured; yet those do not always prove of such ill Consequence in such Habits, as in Constitutions which are reckoned more robust and hardy.

But when there is much White about a Horse's Legs and Pasterns, it is of worse Consequence, especially to those of another Colour, than when it is placed on any other Part of the Body, as the Legs and Pasterns are the most exposed to Injuries, both from their Make and dependent Situation. In their Make, they ought to be nervous and finewy; but such Horses as are hosed with White, have their Legs and Pasterns for the most part very fleshy, and are for that Reason subject to Gourdiness, Scratches, Rats Tails, and other Excrescences.

The other Marks whereby Horses are usually diversify'd, do not portend any thing that we can be very certain of. That some of them are indeed very becoming, and serve to render Horses the more agreeable, as others render them the more unsightly, no one will offer to dispute; besides the Marks are of Use to distinguish

distinguish one from another; and altho' several
 Horses may have the same Kind of Marks, yet
 they are as much diversify'd by them, as Men
 are by their Faces, tho', as to the general Frame
 and Make, all resemble one another. A Horse,
 when he is all of a Colour, looks somewhat
 uncouth; whereas a White Star, a Line or a
 Blaze on the Forehead, if so be these are not
 too large, they look very becoming, but when
 with a white Star, a Horse has also a White ^{The most beautiful}
 Foot, he is looked upon to be the more agree- ^{Marks.}
 able; but if it be the far hind Foot, he is then
 said to be the best mark'd; and our ablest
 Horsemen averr, that it always betokens Good-
 ness. A Horse with a White, or rather a
 grizzled Rump, is commonly esteem'd good,
 unless he be also white before, which, they say,
 betokens Weakness. A Horse with Red or
 Tawny Spots upon his Cheeks or Nose, is com-
 monly accounted stubborn; and such as are
 Flea-bitten and spotted on their Flanks or
 Shoulders, are reckoned weak, and unable to
 endure Fatigue. Most of our Jockeys are also
 of Opinion, when a Mark like an Ostrich Fea-
 ther is placed on the Cheeks or Shoulders, or
 any other Part of a Horse, out of his own Sight,
 that those Horses never fail of being good.

These, and many other Observations have
 been made by Horsemen, whereby to denote
 the Goodness or Badness of Horses; and they
 are very particularly described by the *Sieur de*
Solleysell, who has also endeavour'd to give Rea-
 sons, why Horses should be of this or that
 Temper, according as they are mark'd and di-
 versify'd: But as there is no real Foundation
 for what he has advanced in these Matters, but

has exerted himself chiefly out of an over-great Partiality and Fondness for Custom; and as those Reasonings are no less tedious than uncertain, I have therefore omitted them; and shall proceed to make some Observations on the Make and Shapes of Horses, from whence something may, no doubt, be advanced, which may redound to the Reader's Benefit and Satisfaction.

The Shape
and Con-
figuration.

Altho' a Man can have no perfect Assurance of a Horse's Goodness without a sufficient Tryal, because the most slightly Horses may sometimes prove arrant Jades; and those also which are good and beautiful by Nature, are often ruin'd when they fall into bad Hands, notwithstanding as to outward Appearance they may possibly continue to have many of those Signs which denote the Goodness of a Horse: Yet we may certainly gather a great deal from their Make and Symmetry; for the same Qualities that render a Horse comely and beautiful, are oftentimes also the Concomitants of Goodness; and as *Solleysell* observes, when a Man is once capable of knowing a well-shaped Horse, he will come by degrees to know a good one. For this Reason, tho' the Rule is not infallible, it cannot be amiss to take some Notice of those Observations, which have been made by the best Horsemen, concerning the Shapes and Qualities which have been the most admired for Beauty, Strength and Activity; and tho' there is no such thing in Nature as a Horse truly shaped in all those Particulars noted by Authors, yet this is so far to our Purpose, as the Make of particular Parts in some Horses expose them to Accidents and Diseases more than others, unless a great deal of Care be taken by the

the Keeper ; and we shall hereafter have Occasion to referr to such Defects and Failures, as often as we judge the Accidents arising from thence may be prevented by a careful Management.

That a Horse may appear comely and well ^{The Head.} shaped, his Head should be small, lean and dry, and of a just Proportion ; for a Horse that has a thick Head, can neither be beautiful, nor fit for any genteel Service. If it be gross, and charged with Flesh, it exposes him to Infirmities in his Eyes, and to such as are of the worst Kind, which is easy enough to be accounted for, as it gives a constant Supply to those Disorders ; besides, as such a Load of Flesh disposes a Horse to hang his Head down, it renders him more than ordinarily subject to the Staggers, either upon the least Sickness or hard Exercise.

The Ears should be thin, narrow, and streight, ^{Ears.} placed neither too high, nor too low, and but a moderate Distance between them. The Courage of a Horse is commonly known by the pricking up of his Ears, and pointing them forward, when he is urged on to any brisk Exercise, or at hearing the Noise of a Drum, or any other hollow Instrument.

The Forehead should be somewhat flat, or ^{Forehead.} raised. *Solleysell* prefers a flat Forehead, as the most beautiful. When a Horse is hollow from the lower Part of the Forehead, and raised towards the Place of the Noseband, such an one is said to be Dish-faced. These are commonly hardy, but vicious.

The Eyes ought to be full and sprightly, but ^{Eyes.} not too large, and the Eye-pits not sunk. A Horse which has the Circle of his Eyes thick,

like a Ring, is generally both dogged and stupid; as are also those which have their Brows lowring.

Jaws.

The Jaws should be thin, and on the upper Part placed at a moderate Distance from each other, that the Head of the *Pharynx* or *Throplet* may easily fall in between them, by which Means a Horse always carries himself with the better Grace: Neither ought they to be too deep from the Eyes backward to their Edges, as that also is some Hindrance to a Horse in bending his Neck.

Muzzles.

The Muzzle ought to be small, and above it to the Spine or Ridge of the Nose slender; the Skin delicate and thin, the Hair short, but thick, like the Hair of an *Italian* Greyhound. Some would have the Trunks of the Nerves in those Parts to be cut when a Horse is young, in order to prevent the Muzzle growing too large. An Operation of this Kind may, no doubt, hinder the Growth of those Parts, as the frequent Determination of the nervous Juices causes the Blood to flow into them in greater abundance, than when the Communication by the Nerves is cut off; but the Consequence may be much worse in another respect, by destroying the accurate and quick Sense that ought to be in those Parts, whereby the Smell and Taste must, no doubt, be injur'd, which cannot but be prejudicial to any Horse.

Nostrils.

Next the Muzzle we consider the Nostrils, which ought to be large, thin, and somewhat transparent, that the Redness appear, which always looks beautiful: Besides, when the Nostrils are large, it helps a Horse in Respiration, and is therefore of great Benefit, as all Horses breathe chiefly by the Nose.

The

The Mouth should be reasonably large, and Mouth.
the Tongue small for the Conveniency of the Bit. The Lips thin, the Channel in the lower Jaw large enough for the Tongue, with the Bars sharp and ridged, otherwise he can never be rightly sensible of the Bit. The Palate should be also not fungous, but lean; and for the Conveniency of the Curb, the Beard should neither lie too flat, nor rise too high.

If we take a View of the whole Head, with its right Position, it ought to be slender and well proportion'd, the upper Part of the Face somewhat resembling that of a Ram. It shou'd be well placed, and move easily upon the upper *Vertebra*, or Joint of the Neck, to which it is articulated, so as the whole Face from the upper Part of the Forehead to the Muzzle stand almost perpendicular. Some Horses, which have their Heads very handsome, are nevertheless defective in this Particular, either from an Inaptitude in that Joint, which oftentimes happens to young Horses that are very fat and fleshy, or from an Unpliability or Straitness of the Ligaments, especially those which have never been under the Correction of a Bit; tho' those Parts are in Time often render'd pliable and easy, and the Horse brought to a decent Carriage, without any other Operation than what is owing to the Skill and Management of an expert Riding-Master. But that Inconveniency happens, for the most part, when the Head of a Horse is thick, and charged with Flesh, and the Neck too much built.

Some are of Opinion, and not without Reason, that the Thickness of the Head and Neck in Horses is not always a natural Imperfection, but is sometimes owing to the Countries where they

they are bred. Some Horses grow fleshy more readily than others; and when such are turned into Places where there is but little Grass, and are forced to have their Heads constantly downwards, upon the Account of Scarcity, it may, no doubt, while they are young, and their Vessels pliable and capable of being distended, cause a greater Substance of Flesh to grow on those Parts than otherwise. But if this be not a natural Defect, the Head, and likewise the Neck, if it be grown fleshy, will sometimes become slender after a Horse is brought into Service: Yet it must still be better to prevent such Accidents, by feeding young Horses in a more plentiful Pasture, where they may have Time to rest themselves, and not be always under that Necessity. Some Parts of the Kingdom, where the Pastures are bare and very wide, have been noted for this Defect in the Breed of their Horses.

When a Horse's Head is charged with Flesh, his Neck is also, for the most part, thick; but when that happens not to be a natural Imperfection, and the Neck is of sufficient Length, it often becomes more slender. The Neck of a Mare should be thick, yet well turn'd; but that of a Horse thin, especially where the Mane grows, forming a kind of Half-Arch, and becoming more slender by a kind of Gradation from the Withers upwards to the Onset of the Head; but when the Neck is rightly form'd, there is a small Round made by the Muscles on each Side the Arch; yet not so as to be over distinct and apparent, but agreeable to the Figure of the Muscles, which in that Part are somewhat round and bellied. A Neck well turn'd has a small Distance towards the Onset, falling

falling somewhat obliquely on the under Side from the lower Jaw ; for without such a Distance, the Horse's Chin is apt to rest upon his Counter, and the Convex Part of the Circle or Arch of his Neck is not of sufficient Dimension, for which Reason all such Horses are commonly said to be *Cock-thropled*. But when the Muscles are thick and fleshy towards the Onset, the Middle of the Neck is apt to be too slender, which causes a Sinking there ; and these are usually said to be *Crest-fallen*, which Defect is sometimes help'd by the Care of a skilful Riding-Master. There are, besides these, several other Defects in those Parts, which render a Horse very disagreeable to the Eye, and thereby diminish their Value ; but we shall pass them by unobserv'd, as the Imperfections of that Kind do not affect them so as to render them the less useful in many Respects, considering that we require Horses for Labour and ordinary Service, as well as for Delight and Appearance.

The Mane should be rather thin than other-Mane. wise, and of a pretty good Length ; and is always the more graceful with a natural Weave from the Roots, somewhat frizzled towards the Points of the Hairs ; but nothing is more becoming to Horses of a light Colour, than having their Manes finely shaded. The Ancients esteemed a thick Mane the most, and their Judgment has been very much condemn'd by the Moderns on that Account ; but the Manes of their Horses in *Greece* and *Italy* were for the most part too thin, and not like those in our *Northern* Climates.

The Withers are form'd by the high Processes ^{Withers.} of the Bones of the upper Part of the Spine,
but

but chiefly the Muscles, which fill up the Cavity on each side, beginning where the Mane ends, and reaching to the Declivity of the Back. They should be of a pretty good Length, and moderately raised, but not too fleshy, nor too high.

Counter. The Counter or Breast of a Horse should be full and large, for that always denotes Strength and Comeliness. Mr. *Solleysell* is of Opinion, that *Flanders* Horses ought not to be too large in the Counter, excepting such as are for Draught, because they are thereby render'd the more heavy and unactive; but as those Horses seem chiefly for Draught, we ought not to find fault with them when they are duly proportion'd, and fit for those Services for which Nature seems to have design'd them; for when it is otherwise, that a large Horse happens to be narrow on the Breast, tho' he may indeed be the more active, yet it is not improbable, but very likely, that he should be faulty in another Respect; as, the Narrowness of the Chest sometimes causes an Imperfection in a Horse's Wind.

Shoulders. The Shoulders should rather be thin and slender, than thick, for nothing is more disagreeable than a heavy-shoulder'd Horse; besides that it is very inconvenient, and exposes him to Accidents. By a thick-shoulder'd Horse, we here mean such an one as is very much loaded with Flesh on those Parts, whereby the Shoulders not having their full Play, the Motion is uneasy and restrain'd; and a Horse, with this Imperfection, is seldom able to bear any great Fatigue; tho' if his Shoulders be well supplied by a moderate and gradual Exercise, a great deal of that Load and Incumbrance will
in

in Time be sunk, and the Parts often grow more firm and durable, as well as easy in their Action; but when there is an undue Position of the whole Shoulder, including both Bones and fleshy Parts, there is then no Remedy left. The Weight and Heaviness of the Shoulders oftentimes affects a Horse's Feet, so as to render them infirm and diseas'd. The Situation of a Horse's Fore-Thighs or Arms is also in a great Measure owing to the Position of the Shoulders; and therefore when the Blade-Bones lie close and flat on each Side to the upper Part of the foremost Ribs, and at the same Time move easy, and without Constraint, the Horse's Shoulders must then be good and comely, and his Legs will, for the most part, stand and move easy, and beautiful. The Blades of the Shoulders are only placed to the Ribs by Apposition, being tied by several strong Muscles and Tendons, some of which also cover them on all Sides. For this Reason a well-shoulder'd Horse has always those Muscles firm, and the outward Skin pretty much braced out; when it appears wrinkled upon moving the Legs, it is frequently a Sign of Relaxation and Debility in the Shoulders, and those Horses will soon tire in any kind of Action.

The Back and Reins should be streight from the Withers downwards to the Croup, and not hollow. Horses with this Imperfection are generally weak and unable to endure much Fatigue; besides that they are often incommoded by the Saddle, as are also those which are too low on the Withers. In a beautiful plump Horse, the Chine should appear double by the Fulness of the Muscles, which fill up the hollow Spaces between the Ribs and Spines on each

each Side. The Back should also be of moderate Length, neither too short, nor too long. A short Back always denotes Strength; but sometimes, when it is to an Extreme, it is neither beautiful, nor easy to the Rider; and when a Horse is long back'd, he not only looks poorly, but is for the most part weak.

Ribs.

The Ribs should form a Compass rounder than an Oval; they should neither be placed too close, nor too distant from one another. When the short Ribs advance pretty near the Haunch Bone, a Horse is then said to be homerid and well coupled. These Horses seldom fail of good and full Flanks. The Flanks of a Horse are never bad when they are not sunk under the Turn or Parting of the Hair; but when it is otherwise, that the Feather of the Flank lies hid in the hollow Part, the Horse is to be suspected as faulty in his Wind, excepting when he has for a considerable Time been under bad Keeping.

Belly.

The Belly should be round and full, but not hanging too low, nor stretching out on each side like a Cow or a Mare with Foal. These Horses are generally sluggish, and unable to go thro' any hard Labour, excepting for Draught.

Croup.

The Croup should have a moderate Fall, taking a sort of Compass from the Head of the Haunch Bone quite down to the Dock, forming a Gutter or Channel in the Middle. The Haunch Bones should not be placed too near each other, but at a moderate Distance; nor so high as to be in view of each other. The Dock ought to be in Proportion to a Horse's Size, rather somewhat large and stiff, and the Hair of the Tail not too thick and bushy. The Tail should be placed neither too high nor too low,

low, both Extremes being unseemly; and *Solleysell* observes, when the Tail is placed too high, a Horse's Breech resembles a Plum; and when too low, it denotes a Weakness in the Reins.

The Fore-Thigh should be large towards its upper Part, very clean and firm towards its Juncture with the Knee. The Knee large, but not fleshy. The Shank, for Gracefulness, somewhat long; tho' for Fatigue or Travel, it is not the worse that it be somewhat short. The Shank should be broad, but lean and nervous; the Back-Sinew moderately large, in Proportion to a Horse's Size and Make; it ought not to adhere close to the Shank, but there should be a visible Space or Distance, otherwise the Leg will look round and gouty.

The Pasterns ought also to be large, in Proportion to the Size of the Horse, and free from all Swelling and Goutiness. Another good Property in them is, to be but of a moderate Length; for when they are long, a Horse is said to be long-jointed, and is look'd upon to be weak and feeble in those Parts.

The Cornet should scarcely be elevated above the Hoof, but appear only by the Difference of the Hair, which in a beautiful Foot is finely weav'd. When the Cornet is large, it denotes an over-great Relaxation and Moisture in that Part, which is apt to turn ulcerate, and sometimes it betokens the Foot to be over-much dried.

The Hoof ought to be dark and shining, somewhat resembling the Colour of a Black Flint; those which are of a light Grey, being generally too soft, as the White are for the most part too brittle. A well-shaped Hoof is of

of a fine Convex, neither too short, nor too high, but broadish towards the Bottom.

Heels.

The Heels should be large, and moderately high; the Frush small, and somewhat moist, but yet not so as to be fungous: The Sole pretty thick and tough, hollow on the inside where the Shoo is placed.

The Hind Thighs.

The Thighs behind should be large, fleshy, and well-spread on the outside, to appear well Gascoin'd. When a Horse happens to be too narrow on those Parts, the Defect is so manifest, that even those who know little or nothing of a Horse, can perceive it, as it makes a Horse exceedingly ill-favour'd, especially when his Croup is broad; besides that it often denotes a Horse to be weak in his hind Quarters.

The Hams.

The Hams, or Houghs, should be large, lean, and nervous, and but moderately bent; the Instep-Bone large, flat, and lean; the great Sinew behind large, and separate from the Bone, so as to be plainly discernible, even at some Distance. When a Horse stands on an Even Ground, that Bone, or that Part of the Leg which reaches from the Ham to the Pastern, ought to be perpendicular and strait; which, as it is the most beautiful, so it also betokens Strength.

The Hind Pasterns.

The hind Pasterns and hind Feet ought to have the same Properties which have been ascribed to those of the Fore Parts.

These are the Observations of the ablest Horsemen relating to the true Shape and Make of a Horse; and it is certainly worth any one's while, especially those who can go to the Price of the best Horses, to make themselves somewhat acquainted with those Things; tho', after this, it requires a very accurate Judgment, and
a large

a large Experience, to be able to judge like a Horseman; because, as has been already taken Notice, there is really no such Thing in Nature as a Horse with all the Excellencies of Shape and Appearance described by Authors; and those Persons who judge without Experience, or have not an uncommon Taste, but take all by Rule, are seldom or never pleased with any Horse; and oftentimes, when they meet with one they like, they prove very singular in their Opinion, and differ from all knowing Persons.

The Duke of *Newcastle*, who was undoubtedly inferior to no Man in the Knowledge of Horses, has exposed that kind of Preciseness with a great deal of Judgment: He says, "The perfect Shape of a Horse, as many Authors have described it to us, is so very nice, that it cannot possibly be found, being but a meer *Chimera*, because they take the Shape of every particular Member from Horses of different Kingdoms, and join them together, to make up a perfectly well-shaped Horse; so that they compose them as they please, and frame a Horse only after their own Fancy, and not at all according to Nature. The *Barbs* are of one kind of Shape, *Spanish* Horses of another, and *Turkish* Horses differ also in their Shapes one from another. The *Neapolitan* Horses have also one Shape, and the *Friesland* and strong-knit *Dutch* Horses differ in Shapes from them all; yet nevertheless the Horses of all these Countries are perfectly well-shaped in their Kinds, and according to the different Structures of their Bodies. And altho' there be also different Sizes amongst all these various Kinds, yet

The Duke of Newcastle's Opinion concerning the Shape of Horses.

The Dieting of Horses.

“ when I see a Horse, I can immediately
 “ discover whether he be a *Barb*, *Spanish* Horse,
 “ *Turk*, *Neapolitan*, or strong *Dutch* Horse.
 “ Several People have ask’d me which was the
 “ best and most beautiful Horse in the World?
 “ To whom I reply’d, that until they told me
 “ for what Use they desired him, I could give
 “ them no positive Answer; because the most
 “ part of the Horses of all these different
 “ Kingdoms are good and beautiful in their
 “ Sizes, and may be made use of according to
 “ their Kinds in that Service for which they
 “ are most proper.

Concern-
 ing the
 Horses of
 different
 King-
 doms.

As it is not my Design to say any thing at
 large, concerning the Horses of different King-
 doms, after that Noble Person, who was himself
 Master of many different Kinds; and has, in
 his Excellent Book, accurately described their
 Make and Temper from his own Experience
 and Observation: I shall only add in general,
 that as all Kingdoms have their different Races,
 so we find the Horses of every Climate per-
 fectly suited to the Services and Uses of those
 Countries where they are bred. The *Dutch*
 and *Flanders* Horses are fitted to the Soils in
 those Parts, which require strong Horses for
 Draught, and have therefore Food which is
 proper for the Nourishment and Growth of
 such large Cattle. These Horses also thrive
 very well when they are transplanted into our
 own Nation, which no less requires such a Breed;
 altho’ in Time, many of that Kind somewhat
 degenerate as to their Size and Bulk, yet it has
 been observ’d, that they become more active
 and fit for our Use. Many of the *Spanish*
 and *Barbary* Horses, when they come into our
 Climate, are unable to travel and go through
 the

the same Fatigue as they were wont to do in the Air and Soil where they were foaled, and afterwards nourished; but the Races we have from them are durable and hardy, and from them the greatest Part of the Breed of our light Horses have some Tincture, tho' by degrees they degenerate in Point of Shape and Beauty. The small Horses of our own Nation are perfectly suited to those particular Soils and Countries where they are bred; for Instance, in *Wales*, the Country being in many Places mountainous, bare and dry, does not so much require Horses for Draught, as those that are small and well coupled, and fit to climb up the Sides of Mountains, where taller Horses could not go, at least without some Difficulty. The same is no less observable in many Places of *Scotland*, and the *Isle of Man*, where the Soil is bare, and unfit to nourish any other kind of Horses but such as are the most useful in those Parts.

And thus we see how much all Creatures are not only fitted to the Soil and Climate where they are bred, that they thrive most in those Parts, but are likewise the most useful to the Inhabitants; and this would be no less evident, were we go over many other Parts of the World.

In the *Eastern* Countries, the Horses are as fine and beautiful as in any Parts of the World; and no People are more delighted, or more careful to keep up their Races than the *Eastern* Princes; but notwithstanding all their Care and Diligence, their Numbers are but small, considering the Largeness of those Dominions; and we find they have always been of very great Value; insomuch that they seldom come into

The Dieting of Horses.

the Possession of any of the meaner Sort. But we see Providence has supply'd the Want of them by a great Abundance of *Camels* and *Dromedaries*, which are more useful in that large Continent, where the Commerce must be maintain'd for many Hundreds of Miles, all over Land, which could never be done by Horses, not only as the latter are no ways able to carry such large Burdens, but as they cannot bear the Toil of travelling thro' such vast Defarts and Tracts of burning Sands, where there is little or no Food for their Support, but what must be carried along with them.

But as to the Shape and Make of Horses, we find, as the Duke has observ'd, that there are Horses of all Countries perfectly well-shaped according to their Kind; and as he takes Notice in another Place, by comparing the different Kinds of Horses to the different Kinds of Dogs; so we find even in the same Country some Horses of Size and Make different from one another, and are nevertheless beautiful as a Greyhound or a Mastiff may be, both exactly shaped after their Kind, tho' in many Particulars they are very unlike one another; and therefore we may very reasonably fall in with that Noble Person, where he asserts that the perfect Shape of a Horse, according to the Description of Authors, is no where to be met with in Nature.

A Comparison between the Works of Nature and Art, so far as relates to the true Shape of Horses.

It is not unlikely that most Writers in Horsemanship have join'd with their own Observations what they have borrowed from the Works of the *Painter* and *Sculptor*, from which they have form'd the Shapes and Lineaments of what they account a perfect Horse. We must, indeed, own, that there is a very great Beauty in

in many Pieces of Art, especially in those where Nature has been carefully imitated; and we may, no doubt, be assisted very much in what relates to the Shape of many Animals, from the Works of the ablest Artists; but no Man can be a proper Judge even of those Works, without studying Nature in the first place; that is, we ought first to observe carefully the living Life, before we are able to know when Nature is carefully followed; otherwise we shall be apt to rely too much upon Art, and from thence form our Judgment; which, as has been already observ'd, never fails to lead raw, unexperienced Persons into Conceit and Error.

The Works of Nature are infinitely various, even if consider'd with respect to any single Species of Animals; whereas Art is very much limited and confined. The Beauties of Nature consist in Variety, and yet in an easy and unconstrain'd Regularity; which is plainly observable in those Animals, which are the most perfectly shaped, according to our Notions of Symmetry and Proportion; nor does that appear less in such as seem to us somewhat disagreeable; for excepting where some Accident or Disease causes a Disproportion and Deformity, Nature is never faulty in herself, but all her Works have their several Beauties and Perfections, tho' there are still Degrees, and some are, no doubt, more delightful to us than others.

This Variety, both with respect to Animals, as also to Things inanimate, is absolutely necessary, and agreeable to our Existence, which requires a Diversity of all Objects, and our Imaginations would be soon fatiated and weary without such a Diversity; but with respect to Horses, and many other living Creatures, that

Diversity is also necessary for the several Uses we require of them in our Service. But as this has already been taken Notice of, I shall only add some few Observations to those which have been made concerning Shape and Beauty.

Beauty is in itself so very nice, that few are agreed in those Points which render any Object truly beautiful. There is oftentimes an universal Consent as touching the whole; but when once we come to take a Thing into Pieces, and examine its Parts distinctly, we shall scarcely find two Persons of the same Mind; and yet where there is this universal Agreement, we may conclude that Object for the most part to be what we call beautiful.

We are often deceived in the Examination of single Parts, because in them we require all the Exactness which Authors ascribe to Members that are perfectly form'd according to a certain *Medium*, which is a constant Rule among Artists; whereas in an Animal Body especially, our right way of Judging is, to examine into the Consent and Agreement which is between the Parts, and at the same time to comprehend the whole Make and Frame together in its full Force.

The Life
included
in the
Beauty of
all Ani-
mals.

But in all living Animals, Beauty includes not only the external Make, but that which actuates and gives Motion to all the several Parts. In this respect also Nature wonderfully bears the Ascendant over Art, which, however exquisite in its Kind, yet the Want of Life renders it but dull; and all the Admiration we have of it, is only as we observe it to be an exact Imitation of the Original. And thus as the Beauty of all Living Animals consists greatly

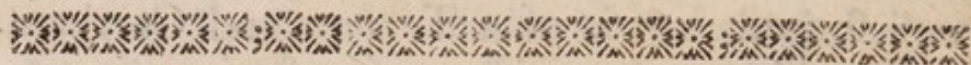
greatly in a right Disposition of the Vital and Animal Faculties, as well as in the external Frame and Make; and as the latter is but a dead Image, and can render no Creature truly amiable without the former, we ought therefore to have a strict Regard to that, observing carefully every Gesture, Look, and Motion. If a Horse be in himself genteel, and of good Lineage, he will early discover something of his Spirit and Temper, and his natural Actions will even shew what Expectations we may have of him, when those are once regulated and corrected by Art.

There is something in a beautiful Horse so agreeable, that we are charm'd, and as it were brought into a Rapture at the very Sight of him, tho' we are not always able so declare the Reason; and when a Horse is not only well-shaped, but is of a Temper and Carriage answerable, moves without Constraint, it expresses something the most experienced Horsemen can better conceive than describe; but so far as we are able to borrow from outward Signs, the whole Countenance is very much to be regarded.

In a Horse of Courage and Mettle, the Eye is lively and piercing, but yet composed; the Ear quick and attentive, and in a manner ready upon every Emotion of the Mind; for, as *Pliny* very well observes, *The Intentions of a Horse may as well be known by the Motion and Pointing of his Ears, as the Inclinations of a Dog by the Shaking of his Tail.*

A Horse of true Mettle pricks up his Ears and paws, as express'd in the beautiful Description of the Warrior-Horse in *Virgil*: His Eye is piercing, fixed, and as it were unmove-

able from its Object; it is also full and well form'd; he has a majestick Awfulness in his whole Countenance, which is nevertheless temper'd with Serenity and Gentleness, and all the other Marks of true Courage. His whole Action agrees with his Temper; he is fierce or gentle, as this or that Affection moves him, according as he is provoked or applauded. His Muscles appear at every Motion, not flabby, but firm and distinct: His Veins, like so many Rivulets, are winded in an infinite Number of Meanders: His Limbs are clean, nervous and durable, and ready upon every Call. A fine Horse seems of all Brute Creatures to approach the nearest to Man, both for Beauty, Majesty and Sagacity; and his Services are also the most Noble and Excellent.



C H A P. II.

*Of the Instinct and Sagacity of Horses;
with some Considerations concerning their
various Tempers and Inclinations.*

AS the Consideration of those Qualities which some Writers of Elements have ascribed to Animal Bodies, under the Denomination of Things Natural, consisting of *Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members, Powers, &c.* can be of no use, being really nothing but bare Forms, without a Substance, meer Modes of Thinking, which have their Existence no where but in the Mind; we have therefore industriously avoided both here,
and

and in our *Farrier's Guide*, taking Notice of them. Neither do I judge it necessary to say any thing further concerning the Animal and Vital Faculties, having sufficiently handled those Things in the Anatomical Part of the same Treatise. My Business in this Place shall only be to lay down some Considerations concerning the Sagacity and Temper of Horses, these being real Qualities from whence we may attain some certain Knowledge, by Observation and Experience, which may be of great Use towards their Health and Preservation.

We need not detain the Reader with Instances concerning the Sagacity and Sense of Horses, as most Writers have done; that being sufficiently known to all Persons who have been the least conversant among these Creatures: I shall, however, take Notice, that the more sensible any Creature is, he must, no doubt, be the more docible, and consequently the more fit for all manner of Service; and we find this Temper and Disposition in Horses to be a great Means to preserve them from many Accidents and Injuries, which otherwise they would, no doubt, be exposed to.

The common Instinct which is implanted in all Brute Creatures, is chiefly in order to their Preservation; but it is plain enough, that Quality approaches nearer to Reason in some than in others; and no one can imagine the Care some of those Creature take of themselves in the common Exigencies, both with respect to their Food, and likewise in avoiding Danger.

A Horse is a Creature naturally of Strength and Courage; and for that Reason he is not endow'd with so much Stratagem, as many other Creatures of less Account, particularly the Beasts

Horses exceeding various in their Tempers.
of

of Prey, whose Instinct leads them not only to many little Wiles for their Preservation, but likewise to Cruelty and Fierceness: But yet Horses are infinitely various in their Tempers, and tho' some are indeed of a noble, generous Nature, others are exceeding vicious, inasmuch that they are hardly to be brought under any Rule or Discipline.

As it is among Men, so among Horses, we observe some to be lively, brisk and active, others dull and sluggish; some are calm and gentle, others fierce and furious; some are skittish and fearful, others resolute and bold; and there are some, which being naturally of a very excellent Disposition, are nevertheless rendered quite the Reverse, by falling into bad Hands.

When the Viciousness of a Horse is not accidental, but depends upon his natural Disposition, there are always some Signs which may be gathered from his Countenance; but those which Horsemen have ascribed to Colour, or to other external Marks, are for the most part false, and not to be depended on, any more, than if we were to describe the Temper of a Man from the Colour of his Skin, or his Hair; and therefore that we may not be led into Error from a mere Fondness for Custom, the best

surest way to know a Horse's Temper. Trial the way is certainly to have Recourse to Trial. And in most Instances we may strictly be satisfied, because a vicious Nature in a Brute Creature may soon be discover'd, tho' sometimes a Horse may be stubborn by Fits; and there are also Horses which are vicious in some particular Things, which they conceal but upon certain Occasions: Yet this is for the most part not a natural Vice, but owing to some *Antipathy*;

pathy; and a Horse oftentimes contracts a single vicious Trick from the Unluckiness of a Boy, or an unskilful Groom; which he will only discover when some Accident happens that revives that *Antipathy*.

It is also evident, with respect to Horses, as well as Men, that their Tempers alter with their Years. We find some Colts so fiery, that there is no managing of them without much Care and Trouble: But every good Horseman would be sparing in passing a Judgment on such Colts. For many of those are not in their Nature faulty, but only pamper'd and high mettled; and when they come under proper Discipline, and arrive to their Years of Discretion, prove as mild and tractable as any. Fire and Mettle in a Colt is always commendable, and promises well, at the same time it may seem to tend towards an Extreme; and if a Horse has not Mettle when he is young, it is very certain there can be no great Expectations from him when advanced to Maturity; since according to the common Course of Nature, all Creatures grow more temperate, as they advance in Years, even to that Point from whence they decline. But there is no absolute Rule in those Matters, there being some Colts which for Action and Spirit promise but little; yet in time grow lively, brisk and vigorous, as there are others which promise well in the Beginning, but in the End prove arrant Jades.

Sometimes Colts are turned into Pastures, where the Grass is too luxuriant and strong for their Constitutions, which induces an evil Habit of Body, even as some Children of tender, delicate Natures contract Diseases when put out to Nurses, whose Milk is too rank, and affords

The Tempers of Horses change and alter.

Food affects their Tempers.

too strong Nourishment; and for that Reason, when such Colts are afterwards brought into a Pasture suitable to them, they grow vigorous and lively, in Proportion to their Size and Make. It happens likewise, that some very fine Colts, by being turned into wet Pastures, where they are forced to lie upon the cold Ground, or into Places where there is no Shelter to defend them from the piercing Winds, thereby contract Diseases which keep them from thriving; and while these are often in a Sort of Languishment, it is impossible they should exert that Mettle, which may be natural in them, until Time and proper Care wears off that Habit.

The Mismanagement of Colts has the same Effect.

The Mismanagement of Colts sometimes lays the Foundation of such ill Habits, that tho' they may be good in Nature, yet they often miscarry, and come to nothing; there being hardly any thing more difficult, than the removing Habits of an old standing, especially when they are contracted early. And therefore, to judge accurately in those Matters, requires a great deal of Experience, and the Consideration of many different Circumstances. As, for Instance, the Kind and Lineage of a Horse, his Usage from the Time he was weaned, the Accidents which have happened to him; as also, his present State and Condition of Body, which is the hardest of all to judge of, unless where there are some apparent Signs of Indisposition. We may indeed easily know when a Horse is faulty in his Wind, when he is lame; and we can easily perceive when there is any outward Swelling and Deformity on any Part, or when he has a Fever, or any acute Distemper upon him; but it is very difficult to judge of Chronical

Chronical Indispositions, where there are no visible outward Signs, but a Distemperature of the Solids and Fluids, which in all ill Habits is more or less universal; besides that there may be some particular Part affected, which may not only cause that Indisposition, but may also be the Reason why such oftentimes happen to be of ill Consequence. Those Habits often affect the Tempers of Horses, and are yet hard to be determined: And unless an Alteration can be made by a different *Oeconomy* in keeping, that is, unless a Colt or Horse mends upon a Change of Diet and Exercise, there can be no great Hopes of him.

No one can be insensible, how much the Temper and Inclinations of all brute Creatures are affected by the Disposition of their Bodies; and we find even the same with respect to Men. A Man neither thinks nor acts the same way in Sickneſs, as in a State of Health; and the Mind is more affected in some Indispositions than in others; which, no doubt, is very much owing to the Body; only there is this Difference, that a Man often suffers in his Mind by Reflexion, as well as from the Body, which makes his Indispositions more irksome to him, by impressing dismal and unpleasant Ideas on the Imagination, whereas brute Creatures suffer from the Body chiefly. Horses and other Brute Creatures have indeed their several Affections, and are sometimes actuated into Heat and Fretting by something from Instinct; yet as that Discomposure is in its Nature simple, and accompany'd with little or no regular Reflexion, it therefore soon wears off, or the Consequence must be to bring the Creature into a Fever. But Chronical Habits in a Horse

Horse have often this Influence to change his Temper and Disposition, so as to render him sluggish by abating his natural Courage, and by long Continuance will render him faint and unable to bear any great Fatigue, and likewise obnoxious to many Accidents, which exceedingly lessen his Value; and yet a Horse, notwithstanding those Infirmities, will promise indifferently well, as to outward Appearance.

Sometimes such Habits are so strongly riveted, that no Change or Alteration will give a Turn to them; and the Body is often so thoroughly blended with them, that they become, as it were, their natural State; and the removing of such Habits can seldom be attempted by any one, because in all such Cases it is difficult to make an exact Judgment concerning them. But that there are such hidden Indispositions, is very manifest; and I believe there are few, who have bought any Number of young Horses, which they have kept to their Maturity, and have not at the same time found some who were dull, faint and lazy, attain afterwards to sufficient Mettle and Courage: And whenever this happens to any Horse that looks plump and in good Case, it is, no doubt, an Instance of some habitual Disorder in his Blood, tho' at the same time there must have been no Havock made upon any principal Member. As to those who are lean, jaded, and out of Heart, and by that means lose their Spirit and Mettle, there are so many Instances thereof in the Knowledge of Horsemen, that there needs be no Notice taken of them here, especially as the Cause is visible at first Sight, and moreover, as all such Indispositions are often removed by Ease and Food.

But

But besides the Difference of Tempers, which proceed from Habit, or those peculiar to the different Kinds of Horses in the same Country; the Horses of different Countries, as well as the other Inhabitants, have also their different and peculiar Inclinations. The Horses that are brought from *Turkey* are by no means to be managed by Force, but by gentle Usage. The *Barbs* are nimble, active, courageous, and gentle to Admiration, and the most tractable of any in the World; and it is reported of them, that they are so sensible and obedient in their own Country, as to stand promiscuously with Mares without making the least Disturbance. The *Spanish Horses* will do the same: They are also of great Mettle and Spirit, and exceeding courageous, but not quite so docible as those of *Barbary*. Some *Flanders Horses* are also very tractable, and making Allowance for their Bulk and Size, many of them are also very active and nimble, and indeed, after their Kind, are exceeding stately. On the other hand, the *Friesland Horses*, and many of our own Races, are very stubborn and froward, and must therefore be managed with the greatest Care imaginable.

Sir *William Hope*, in the Sixth Chapter of his Treatise of Horsemanship, gives the Preference to *Spanish Horses* above all other, both in point of Sagacity and Temper. He says, "Of all the Horses in the World, the *Spanish Horses* are the wisest, by far the wisest, and strangely wise, beyond any Man's Imagination, but are not the easier dress'd for that, because they observe too much with their Eyes, and their Memories are too good, so that they conclude with their own Judgment

Different
Tempers
peculiar
to differ-
ent King-
doms.

Sir Will.
Hope's Re-
marks on
the Spa-
nish Horse.

" too

“ too soon, without the Rider’s Reasoning, as
 “ it were, without their Host; whereas they
 “ should obey his Hand and Heel, and that
 “ not by Rote neither, but by Act; which is
 “ a Habit got by many Lessons methodically
 “ taught. The *Spanish* Horse may be justly
 “ call’d the Prince of Horses; and, if well
 “ chosen, is the Noblest Horse in the World.
 “ For first, there is no Horse so curiously
 “ shaped all over from Head to Foot; he is
 “ also the most beautiful that can be, being
 “ not so thin and Lady-like as the *Barb*, nor
 “ so gross as the *Neapolitan*, but between both.
 “ He is very docile, and of great Spirit and
 “ Courage; hath the proudest Walk, stateliest
 “ Action in his Trot, loftiest Gallop, and
 “ swiftest Career; and is also the lovingest
 “ and gentlest Horse, and fittest for a King
 “ in a Day of Triumph to shew himself to
 “ his People, or at the Head of an Army, of
 “ any Horse in the World.

Remarks
 of the An-
 cients con-
 cerning
 them.

We find different Accounts in Authors con-
 cerning the *Spanish* Horses. In the Time of
Absirtus, it would appear they were very strong,
 and of a large Stature; but according to the
 Accounts of *Oppianus*, and others, their Breed
 have, at another Time, been weak and slender,
 tho’ of great Activity, insomuch that they even
 exceed the *Parthian* Horses, and all the Races
 of the *East* in Speed. It seems also, by what
 we learn from the same Authors, that some
 have run down their Courage; but according
 to what their Breeds are at present, and by
 such of them as come into our Nation, they
 seem very much to answer the Character Sir
William Hope has given of them: Tho’ the
 Duke of *Newcastle* prefers the *Barbs*, on the
 Account

Account of their Size, and likewise because of their gentle and tractable Nature. That No-^{The Duke}ble Person gives the *Spanish* Horses much the ^{of New-}same Character Sir *William* has done; but as ^{castle's O-}pinion of the *Barbs*, he says, they were his Favou-^{the Barbs,}rites, and that he never knew their Equals, for the Excellency of their Size, their pure and nervous Force, their gentle Nature and Tractableness. He owns they have neither the Step, Trot, nor Gallop so stately as the *Genets* or *Spanish* Horses, but when once they are well research'd or put to it, he affirms, he never saw Horses go so well as they, all Sorts of *Aires*, as well for the *Manage De Guerre*, *Passades*, *Terra a Terra*, as in the Leaps. And afterwards he observes, that they are most nervous, strong, and swift, and are also excellently well winded; but that some of them are dull and melancholick, yea even in the Field, until they are awaked, or that there be something required of them. He takes Notice likewise, that the Mountain *Barbs* are the best and most courageous, and that many of them retain the Marks of Wounds they have receiv'd from Lions.

All the latest Writers have commended the Courage of the *Barbs*, as also their gentle and tractable Nature; and it is not unworthy to be observed, that altho' Gentleness, or rather a Flexibility of Temper, may sometimes accompany a soft Delicacy in Horses, and many other Creatures; yet it holds for the most part, that we seldom find true Mettle and Courage in any Horse, without a great Deal of Docility and Mildness; and those are commonly the most courageous, which cannot be awaken'd upon every slight Occasion. Howbeit, a Horse of
D right

right Courage will always appear beautiful, and shew an uncommon Spirit in his Actions.

The Action is, no doubt, that whereby we can best judge of the Temper of any Horses; yet there are some other Marks from the outward Make, which may also be of Use to us, tho', as has been observed, those taken from Colour are not much to be depended on. The whole Make of a Horse sometimes discovers to us, that he is of a dull and heavy Appearance, and sometimes we may with half an Eye perceive a Horse to be of such a Make, as must render him fleet, nimble, and full of Agility: And some things may also be gathered from the Make of particular Parts; but the surest Judgment we can form of a Horse's Temper by outward Signs, is, no doubt, from a Horse's Countenance.

The Looks
and Coun-
tenance
of a Horse
much to
be regard-
ed in
judging
of his
Temper.

As a Horse of a good docible Temper has always a serene Look, and as there is a piercing, lively Eye, and a lofty Carriage, where there is Courage; so when a Horse is vicious, he has a lowering, fowre Look, his Eye wild and fierce; but that Fierceness is only such as we observe in some Beasts of Prey, which proceeds from a Fear mixed with Anger and Cruelty. The Ears of some Horses denote their ill Temper. A Horse that kicks or bites, lays back his Ears like a Greyhound, and like a Fox when environ'd with Dogs, turns up the Whites of his Eyes. Wall-ey'd Horses are often vicious, and those which are dish-faced are commonly stubborn and ill-natured.

Some Horses have a Deadness in their Looks, without a frowning Aspect, or any of the common Signs which denote Vice, and yet upon Trial prove very stubborn. Others have an
Aspect

Aspect which denotes too much Vivacity, and too great a Quickness of the Animal Life; and these Horses, upon Trial, are found not to have true Mettle, but fret and spend themselves in a very short Time, unless a more than ordinary Care be taken of them; and some are so fearful and skittish, that the Motion of a Finger disturbs them.

These and many other Things may be learn'd in general, from the Aspect and Countenance of Horses; but as to the Variety and Mixture of Tempers that are in those Creatures, either naturally or by Habit, there is no Physiognomy can discover them; but it would be absolutely necessary for the Keeper or Groom to study the Temper and Inclinations of such Horses as come under their Management; which cannot easily be done, with respect to all, because of the different Humours and Inclinations which we often observe in the same Horse. And where-ever we perceive a Fickleness and Variety of Temper, it ought as much as possible to be changed, by inducing good Habits.

~~~~~

### C H A P. III.

*Of Habits, and how all Horses are guided more or less thereby; the Manner how ill Habits are induced, with the proper Means to avoid them.*

I Need not acquaint any ingenious Reader, that by a *Habit* we commonly understand somewhat that is not natural to any Animal,



but acquired. But as this Definition is not enough extensive, we shall take some Notice of the different Kinds of Habits, so far as is necessary to our Purpose. And, *First*,

The different Kind of Habits.

There are some Habits peculiar to the Constitutions of all Animals, which may properly enough be called universal bodily Habits; others consist chiefly in Actions, which are in some Sense also bodily Habits, but proceed merely from Use and Custom, independent of the Constitution. There are also Habits of the Mind, and these relate chiefly to Man; but our Business is only to take Notice of those Habits which Brute Creatures are capable of, particularly Horses; and these we are to consider in the foregoing respects.

Bodily Habits, what they are.

Both Man and Beast participate alike in divers bodily Habits; and those which relate to the Constitution are said to be good or bad, according as the Body is in good or bad State. When an Animal is in perfect Health, *viz.* has a good Appetite and Digestion, is able to endure Fatigue, he is then reputed to be in good Case, and of a good Habit of Body; and this is only accounted a Habit, as that good Economy is constantly maintain'd without any great Alteration; and therefore in order to a good Habit of Body, it is necessary that the Blood should also be in a good State, neither too gross, nor too thin, nor of too large, or small a Quantity, but as it were rightly adjusted to the Capacity of the Vessels; besides, it ought to be as free as possible, from any foreign or *heterogeneous* Mixture, that is to say, it ought to have all those Qualities, and participate of such Mixtures, of Flegm, Sulphur and Spirit, &c. which we observe in the Blood  
of



of all Animals, so as may be most agreeable to their Subsistence, though we cannot declare wherein that Equability consists; only we are pretty well assured, that a due and regular Motion of the Blood and Fluids contributes chiefly towards it, as that prevents them from Stagnation and Putrefaction. And as these Qualities are necessary to a right ordered Constitution, so where there is an ill Habit, we may more or less observe a contrary Disposition. In all ill Habits the Secretions are affected, which proceeds from the Want of that uniform and regular Motion of the Blood, and those other Requisites we have observed to be necessary in a State of Health. And we have taken Notice in our *Farrier's Guide*, that the Secretions must be affected, either when the Body is in a *Plethorick* and full State, which is called a *Repletion*; or when it is lean and exhausted, and in a State of *Exhinanition*; and from thence proceed all the other Accidents and Changes in the Animal Canals and Fluids, which accompany an ill Habit; but when either of these happen accidentally by catching Cold, or from any Mismanagement, whereby the State of the Body is suddenly changed; in that Case the Body is not said properly to be of an ill Habit, but diseased.

As a good Habit of Body is, for the most part, natural to those Constitutions where that prevails, so ill Habits are, for the most part, also inherent; and we may observe among several of the Brute Creatures, as great a Difference in this respect, as among Men. Some are so hardy, that they can scarcely be injur'd with any Kind of Management; and others are so delicate and tender, that we find it



very difficult to preserve them in any tolerable State of Health. There are others, which altho' they be naturally hardy, yet when by any Accident their Constitutions are once weaken'd and broke, and if this is not taken Care of, but the Indisposition suffer'd to go on, the Constitution becomes at length so much changed from what it has been, that this debilitated State becomes as if it was purely natural; and as often as we meet with any Instance of this Kind, it must, no doubt, with the greatest Propriety be accounted an ill Habit; as on the contrary, that can only in a strict Sense be called a good Habit, when the natural State of the Body, which was of itself weak and delicate, is by Time and good Management render'd otherwise. And in this Sense, all good or evil Habits are originally owing to some foreign Cause or Mismanagement, tho' they may be more or less aggravated, according to the Degree of Goodness or Badness in each Constitution. Thus much we thought necessary concerning Habits in the Constitution in general: As to the Way and Manner how good Habits are to be induced or maintain'd, as also the Cause of ill Habits, with the proper Method of preventing them; those Things shall be fully consider'd in the Sequel of this Discourse.

The Habits which relate to the Actions of Brute Creatures,

The other Habits which we are to take Notice of in this Place relate chiefly to Action, and become more or less so in Brute Creatures, as they are more or less encouraged by their Keepers and Oversees. The natural Actions of all Brute Creatures tend principally to their Preservation; and as they are only guided by that Instinct, their whole Business is to find out their proper Food, to keep themselves from  
Danger,



Danger, and to propagate their Kind, which they all do in their various Ways. Those which are appointed for our Service to be assiduous to us in our Labours, are, no doubt, of all others the most tractable; and of these, some are more susceptible of Instruction than others. We are indebted to Oxen and Kine, and to many other Creatures, for their Services, as well as to Horses. The Services of the first are indeed chiefly for Food, and the Benefit they are to us in other respects, is only in some Counties for Draught, and therefore all they do is by a sort of Compulsion; and it is only with regard to Toil and Labour, that some other Creatures are made Use of in foreign Parts. But the Labours of Horses are various and manifold, and they are therefore by Nature endow'd with different Capacities, which may be improved to different Services; but altho' some very far excell others, both as to their bodily Perfections and Temper; yet their whole Actions are chiefly conducted by Habit, to some of which they betake themselves naturally, while they are taught and instructed in others.

This is so very manifest, that we need advance no Instances to prove it. A Horse that has been always used to run abroad in the Fields, where he hath his full Scope and Liberty, is at first, with much Difficulty, brought into a Stable; and as such an one has been altogether accustomed to drink of the Brook or Pond, and to gather all his Sustenance from the Ground; what he eats at the Rack is with no small Pain for some Time, and he can hardly be prevail'd on to drink out of a Pail, until he is almost burnt up with Drought, or has had the frequent Example of others before him. The



Curry-Comb and Brush, which many Horses take Delight in after Use, are at first more terrible than the Whip; and no one who has been in a Riding-School, but must have seen how many Horses tremble when they come to be taught their first Lessons in the Manage, tho' they afterwards perform them with the greatest Pride, and oftentimes disdain that Rider, who knows not how to humour their Actions: And it is no less observable, that Horses are as fond and as much captivated with bad Habits, if they be once inured to them, as with those that are good; and therefore a great deal of Care should be taken to season Horses betimes with such Habits as are most agreeable to the several Uses for which they are intended.

Confi-  
der'd with  
respect to  
the Age  
of Horses.

While a Horse is young, his Joints are flexible and green, and ready to any Action; his Inclinations, if at all, are but little tainted; and whatever wrong Impressions are made upon his Imagination, are easily at that Time overcome by others; if he be naturally stubborn or addicted to any Vice, it may also be much more readily conquered; and in a word, he is more apt to all good Lessons and Instructions: But where there is a Viciousness implanted in a Horse's Nature, he easily falls into bad Habits of his own accord, and those Habits are also the most lasting, which are the most agreeable to his Temper and Constitution, if they are not curb'd in the Beginning, and changed into others that are better; which may, no doubt, be done in a great measure, if he falls into the Hands of a good Keeper: But we often find, that from the Want of Judgment in many of those Persons, a Number of Horses



ses are render'd much worse, instead of growing better; for altho' they may indeed wear off some Habits by Stripes and ill Usage, yet when such Methods are indiscreetly follow'd, these Habits are, for the most part, changed into others, which are most pernicious.

There are but few Persons entrusted with the Management and Care of Horses, through-ly enough qualify'd for so difficult an Office; and for that Reason many Gentlemen leave but little to their Grooms and Servants, excepting what relates to the laborious Part. It is not a ready Hand in dressing and currying, or a common methodical Way of feeding and keeping the Stable in good Order, or even the Knowledge of many obvious Faults and Imperfections in Horses, that can render any one a good and accomplish'd Groom; and yet we find but few Persons of that Occupation, whose Knowledge extends farther. There are also many *Querries*, and *Riding-Masters*, and a Number of others, instructed with the managing of young Horses, who, notwithstanding they are well enough acquainted with the common Rules of their Profession, are however wanting in many things that relate to the giving of good and proper Habits.

To bring Horses into good Order and Discipline, and to give them those Habits that are proper for them, it is requisite the Person, whose Business that is, should, in the first place, be thoroughly acquainted with the different Tempers and Dispositions of different Horses, in order to assign them their several Tasks and Employments, which they seem to be the most cut out for by Nature; even as a prudent Father

Such as  
are owing  
to the Un-  
skilfulness  
of their  
Keepers.

The Qua-  
lifications  
of a good  
Keeper or  
Manager  
of Horses.

takes



takes notice of the Tempers and Inclinations of his Children, and puts such Busineses into their Hands, as he judges may be most agreeable to them. He ought to distinguish between those Actions of a Horse which are purely natural, and such as proceed from any ill Habit or Acquirement; and likewise from a thorough Experience to know the different Tendency of bad Habits, the better to conquer them without Violence to the Constitution. He should himself be a Man of Temper, free from Heat and Passion; for a Man who is unable to conquer his own Passions, can never have Patience enough to conquer the shrewd or stubborn Tricks of a Horse by any other Means but mere Force. His Eye should be quick and watchful to observe every Part of a Horse's Carriage, and whatever else may be an Impediment in those Actions he puts him upon; and from a long Experience, he should be able to foresee Accidents, tho' remote and at a Distance. He should also be a great Lover of Horses, and never so much pleased, as when engaged in the Business of his Occupation. This is, no doubt, a very great Qualification in a Horseman, as it is indeed in all other Busineses whatsoever; and we frequently see the barely Industrious, by their close and constant Application, even get the better of Persons of superior Genius and Capacity.

As Horses are without Reason, and take their Instructions chiefly by dumb Signs; and seeing the Knowledge they have in all their Lessons is owing only to repeated Use, it is not therefore to be expected, that they should be capable of very great Variety, and those which excell in that respect must have a more than com-



common Sagacity. It is easy enough to habituate Horses to the Plow, or to draw in a Coach or Waggon, because there is nothing perplexing in those Kind of Exercises; and it is only to break their Stubbornness by such Usage as the Owner or Overseer shall see most necessary, which is for the most part effectuated by keeping them constantly to Labour; and oftentimes when Horses are very tractable of themselves, they need only be join'd to proper Yoke-fellows, whose Company and Example alone will bring them to their Business. It is no less easy to bring a Horse to travel, to carry a Burden, or go thro' any Service, which requires no other Action in the Performance, but what is purely natural; a little Use and Practice will soon perfect most Horses in such Things, and Time will also, without much Correction, break some Horses of Stubbornness, and many other Vices whereunto they may be naturally addicted. But when a Horse is to be instructed, and taught many different Actions, it must, no doubt, be very perplexing, and also require a very long Use and Practice, especially as they have no Assistance from Reason, and but little from Memory, which are the main Sources from whence we ourselves derive our Knowledge; and therefore, with respect to Creatures, where those Faculties are very imperfect, it must be difficult to bring them into the Use of many different Habits; and they must be kept in the constant Exercise of all of them, after they are once season'd with them, otherwise the continued Exercise of one Habit would soon wear out the rest.

These Things ought, no doubt, to be considered diligently by *Riding-Masters*, and others, who

Some Observations from the Temper and Capacity of Horses, necessary to prevent ill Habits.



who have the Making of Horses; and their Capacities and Abilities ought to be as much studied by them, as the Talents of Boys by their Tutors and Instructors, and a Man of thorough Judgment and long Practice may, no doubt, distinguish those Actions wherein any Horse may excel most; and his Conduct will be very commendable while he puts him chiefly upon such, without forcing him against the Grain into Exercises he is no ways capable of.

It must indeed be allow'd, that those Lessons which are taught Horses in the Schools of Riding, are not only in themselves exceeding pretty, and very much add to a Horse's Graceful Carriage, but are also of great Use and Importance; for besides the Service managed Horses are of in the Wars when regimented, any Man who is an expert Rider, has the greatest Advantage in the World over a single Adversary, when mounted on a well-dress'd Horse, who has no other Will but that of his Rider. And this Kind of Management is yet the more commendable, as by it, the natural Actions of a Horse are only regulated; and indeed if it was otherwise, it could never be attain'd to by Horses, neither would it be in its Kind so useful and noble. But tho' all is founded on such Actions as are natural, yet it is difficult to form a perfectly well-managed Horse, because all Horses have not the same natural Actions alike, which in a great measure proceeds from the Difference of Shape and Make, which even affects those Actions that are the most simple.

Some Horses, let them be never so Young, are however not to be brought to any gentle Action or Carriage, even as we find some of our own Species,



Species, who can never be taught to dance. And there are some Horses, which altho' they take readily to one Kind of Exercise, yet there are other Exercises in the Manage to which they have no natural Disposition; and all the Art in the World can never subject them to such. Neither shall we find any Horse so absolutely form'd, as to be alike capable of all Lessons, no more than it is possible for any single Man to excel in all bodily Exercises: And therefore a Horse may be easily led into Habits, which are worse than his natural Actions, when he falls into the Hands of an unskilful Tutor. For my own part, so far as I may venture to give my Judgment in this Affair, I look upon it to be none of the least Qualifications in a Riding-Master, to distinguish perfectly from the natural Action of a Horse those Points wherein he is to be chiefly instructed; for when such Persons are not able to do this, or when they neglect to do it, and a Horse is hurried on to what he is incapable of, it renders him either altogether stupid, turns him to be vicious, or breaks his Constitution, and thereby ruins his Health.

But yet we ought to plead in favour of the Riding-Masters, that those Faults and Miscarriages are oftentimes more owing to the Owners than to them. The Experience which many of the latter have, convinces them fully of the Inconsistency of such Methods; but some Gentlemen, who have but a superficial Knowledge both of Horses and Riding, are so fond, not only of their own Judgment, but so confident of their Horses Abilities beyond what they really are, that they oftentimes make the Riding-Master, even against his Will, compel their  
Horses



Horses to such Actions, as render them liable to those Inconveniencies above-mention'd.

I know it is a received Maxim among many Horsemen, that a Horse ought in the first place to be brought under an absolute Subjection, after which he may be led into any kind of Action; and others approve the winning a Horse over by Love and gentle Usage, as the readiest Means to gain him; but no doubt, with some Horses, both ought alternately to be followed. It is certain all Horses should be more or less brought under Subjection, which ought even in many respects to be absolute; but when this is done, no Subjection in the World can be able to bring a Horse to Actions whereunto he has no natural Disposition.

The Advantage of an absolute Subjection consists in this, that if a Horse be vicious or stubborn by Nature, it keeps that under, by which Means he is forced to perform all those Exercises whereof he is capable; and it likewise helps to overcome those Habits we oftentimes meet with in Horses, which are owing to some *Antipathy*; and it is a great Ease to the Rider, as it also enables him to preserve and continue him in the Practice of all those Lessons he has been taught; but as this is necessary in many respects, so a Horse ought no less to be sooth'd and applauded when he does well; for many of those Creatures are, no doubt, as sensible of Kindness as of bad Usage; and we meet with Instances where some will do more by Applause, than by any Correction in the World; and yet as they are void of Reason, we find the best temper'd and most sagacious of them all, when over-much indulged, grow wanton, and even insult the Person that feeds them;



them; but this is the less to be wonder'd at, as we frequently meet with the same kind of Insolence among Rational Creatures. For which Cause it is absolutely necessary, that a due Authority should be kept up, in order to regulate a Horse's Behaviour; and this should be temper'd in such manner as is most agreeable to the several Circumstances observable in his Actions and Inclinations, whether Natural or Habitual, which must not only be the likeliest Means to avoid bad Habits, but to induce and maintain those which are good.



## C H A P. IV.

### *Of Food, Exercise and Rest, Sleeping and Watching, and the other Non-Naturals.*

**T**Hough we have in our *Farrier's New Guide*, taken some Notice of those Things which Physicians term *Non-Naturals*, yet we judge it very necessary in this Place to make some further Observations concerning them; because upon the right ordering of them, the Health and Preservation of all Animals principally depends.

The *Non-Naturals* are in Number Six, viz. What *Air, Meat and Drink, Motion and Rest, Sleep and Watching*, Things excreted, or retain'd, with the *Affections* of the Mind; and these are said to be profitable or hurtful by Necessity. The Air is the proper Element wherein we live, and without it we cannot breathe; but when the Air is either too thick, or too much rarify'd and thin, the

What Things term'd Non-Naturals.



the Body must be affected, especially if there be any previous Indisposition of Plenitude and Fulness, or when the Body has been too much harrafs'd and low ; for either of those Extremes render the Bodies of all Animals the more susceptible of outward Impressions from the Air.

The Effects of Air upon the Constitution of Animals.

When the Air is too thick, it proves injurious to us, because by its extraordinary Pressure it hinders Perspiration ; so that the Secretions become thereby affected, and the Matter which should be carried off thro' the Pores of the Skin, whether by Sweat, or insensible Transpiration, is forced to find a Passage some other Way, or else there is a Load laid upon the principal Bowels ; and from hence a Horse may easily turn Chest-foundred, or become otherwise affected in his Wind ; but if this Redundancy happens very much upon the Stomach and Guts, and the Glands and Fibres in those Parts become relaxed, then probably will ensue violent Gripings and Looseness. Sometimes the Load falls upon the Eyes, the Mouth, and Glands about the Throat ; and then the Horse is affected as with a Cold, which seldom fails to cause a Running at the Nose ; but if a Horse be fleshy and full when this Pressure is made upon his Body, there is oftentimes in such a Case a very great Stagnation of the Blood in all Parts, which terminates in a putrid or malignant Fever, as the Want of Circulation disposes the Blood to Corruption and Putrefaction ; and sometimes, as in the Case of a stagnated pestilential Air, the Obstructions are so sudden, and so universal, that they soon occasion Death, by affecting the Brain, or other principal Parts.

But



But when the Air is too much rarify'd and thin, the Pressure thereof is not then sufficient to squeeze the Glands and Vessels on the Extremities of the Skin and outward Parts, whereby a Redundancy must unavoidably follow, and the principal Bowels become loaded, the same as when the Air is too thick and condensed: Besides that those Glands are oftentimes by this means gorged, and the Matter they contain, ferments and turns corrupt, which has often this other Effect, *viz.* to break out upon the Skin, causing a Foulness.

*Food*, when it is unwholsome, or if it be administred in an over-great Quantity, or when it is given with too frugal a Hand, causes also many of the same Disorders in the Animal Body. When a necessary Quantity of Food is with-held from any Creature, that Creature becomes low and languishing, and from Want of a sufficient Stock of Spirits, the Blood is not drove to the Extremities in such Plenty, as is sufficient for a regular Secretion; so that the inward Parts become sometimes loaded with a Pressure and Difficulty of Breathing, and the Discharges outwardly are sometimes too liberal, and sometimes too sparing; the Vessels and Fibres suffer a Waste, and turn relaxed, from whence often happen Agues, and intermitting Distempers. When the Food of Animals is unwholsome, it begets a viscid, thick Blood, whereby it is apt to stagnate either in Whole or in Part; from whence proceed divers Infirmities and Diseases: But when a Horse eats too great a Quantity of any Kind of Food, tho' it be never so pure and wholsome, it may, and oftentimes becomes prejudicial, as it crams and fills up the Vessels, and thereby exposes the



Body to many Disorders. But the Reader may consult that Chapter of our *Farrier's Guide*, where we have treated of *Surfeits*. The Drink of all Brute Creatures being nothing but Water, it is therefore the most simple, and unless it be very much stagnated, or impregnated with unwholsome mineral Particles, it seldom proves prejudicial, but extremely useful, as it is the proper Vehicle of all their Food, and what dilutes the Blood and other Juices; which, without a sufficient Quantity of Liquid, would soon grow thick and viscid. That which is the most simple and pure, is, no doubt, the best; but if it be at any time drank in over-great Quantity, or at an improper Season, it may occasion very great Disorders, as shall be shewn hereafter.

Exercise  
and Rest.

As no Creature can subsist without Food, because of the perpetual Dissipation and Waste natural to all Bodies, which must therefore be supported by fresh Supplies of Matter, so Exercise is no less useful. The Life and Health of all Animals consists in the due and uniform Motion of the Blood, which is constantly maintain'd and kept up by the perpetual Action and Impulse of the Heart, and by the Motion of the *Lungs* and *Midriff*; yet the Motion of the whole Body, perform'd by other Members, is no less necessary to the Health and Preservation of all Animals; and without bodily Motion, the other could not be sufficient. If a Creature was only to live, and had nothing required of it but to continue in one Posture, like a Piece of Clock-Work, that involuntary Motion of the Heart (as term'd by some Writers) might then indeed be all that is required; but as all Animals are obliged to move from Place to Place, not only to gather their proper Food, but even many of them  
forced



forced to labour; so their Bodies are, by the Wisdom of Providence, perfectly adapted thereunto; and that which is in one respect necessary to their Health and Preservation, is no less beneficial in another.

The Bodies of all Creatures are made up of an infinite Number of Vessels, many of which are also infinitely small, and yet they contain their proper Juices, which must be in perpetual Motion, in order to the Conservation of Health. The Action of the Heart gives the original Impulse, and from hence the whole Body is supply'd, as from a Fountain; but the Action of the Muscles in bodily Exercise chiefly keeps up that Motion in the extreme and outward Parts, where the Vessels are the smallest; and without such Motion, the Juices in those Parts, which are apt of themselves to turn viscid and thick, would soon stagnate, and the Secretions be very much disorder'd; besides that the continual Supplies of Food would so much gorge those Vessels, that the Body must soon become no better than a dead Weight, and for Want of having the Secretions duly perform'd, a Redundancy must unavoidably happen, whereby, as has been already observed, the principal Bowels must also be loaded; and from thence we may expect the same Effects, as from an intemperate Air, or an Excess of Food; and a Horse in this Condition is not only exposed to Fevers of the worst Kind, but likewise to be Chest-founder'd, and by the continual Load upon the *Lungs* and *Midriff*, to turn consumptive. If the Redundancy fall chiefly upon the Liver or Kidneys, he is then apt to have the Yellows, and to have his Liver *schirrous*, or his Kidneys wasted or ulcerated. If it falls externally upon

Cautions  
concern-  
ing Exer-  
cise.



the Joints and Sinews, it renders him liable to *Spavins*, *Windgals*, and other Excrefcences of the like Nature; and in young Horses, to Gourdi-  
nefs and Swellings in their Legs and Pasterns.

And thus we fee how much Exercife is ne-  
cessary to prevent all those ill Effects. As the  
bodily Motion accelerates and quickens the  
Motion of the Blood, and other Fluids, in Parts  
where it is naturally apt to be languid and  
flow, whereby the Secretions are not only the  
more easily performed, but also by squeezing  
the Glands and Fibres, helps greatly to throw  
off that Matter when separated, which must,  
no doubt, be of extraordinary Benefit; yet if  
Exercife be not duly proportion'd to the Strength  
and Feeding of any Animal, the Consequence  
must, in every other respect, be as bad, and in  
some Circumstances worse. And as apply'd to  
Horses, the Case stands thus, *viz.* when a Horse  
has not sufficient Exercife, we may observe  
him, in the Beginning, to be affected the same  
Way, as in a Surfeit. He becomes first pur-  
five and full, whereby his Body is heated, his  
Dung hardens and turns Black, his Guts are  
filled with Wind, pent up by gross viscid Mat-  
ter, from the Want of a regular Discharge in  
those Parts; and as has been already taken  
notice, this Disorder sometimes causes a Fever,  
and sometimes after violent Colick Pains, it  
terminates in a Scowring and Looseness; be-  
cause Nature will be always endeavouring to  
throw off what is burdensome in that Way,  
which is the most ready, but especially from  
those Parts where she suffers the most Violence.  
These are oftentimes the first Effects we ob-  
serve of the Want of due Exercife; as to the  
other subsequent Effects, they are without Num-  
ber,



ber, because from thence may happen all the Diseases to which the Animal Body is obnoxious. But on the other hand, when the Exercise of a Horse is too violent, and no ways proportion'd to his Strength and Feeding, the Body is thereby haras'd, and the violent Hurry of the Blood forces it in an over-great Quantity into the Extremities and outward Parts, whereby a greater Separation is made in the Glands, and a larger Discharge of Matter is also effected, by which means a Horse becomes jaded and faint; and by a constant Habit of Sweating, he readily turns *hective*, or subject to *Agues*, and intermitting Distempers, and sometimes to inward Wastes and Decays: But when his Body has not been season'd to Exercise, he is then no less subject to many sudden Accidents, and of the same Nature with those which proceed from too much Ease and Rest: As for Instance; when the Blood is viscid and thick, and is in this Condition put into a violent Motion, it is apt to stagnate in those Parts where the Vessels are the smallest. And from hence proceed Obstructions in the external Parts, which hinder Perspiration; and this soon causes a Redundancy on the Inwards, which is commonly attended with Oppression and Purpiveness, if not with a putrid and malignant Fever. If the Blood be very much gorged in the Vessels of the Brain by any violent Hurry of Exercise, it will sometimes cause a Horse to fall down in the Staggers, tho' the Blood it self be little or no ways disorder'd, as has been fully shewn in our *Farrier's Guide*.

But besides all those last mention'd Effects, which may, no doubt, proceed from too violent Exercise, when that is continued without the



necessary Supplies of Food, there are many others, which affect chiefly the Limbs of a Horse, by weakening the Nerves and Sinews; and altho' a careful Management of a Horse's Diet, join'd with daily and moderate Exercise, greatly strengthens and invigorates those Parts, by wearing off all superfluous Matter, which causes Weakness and Relaxation; so the contrary oftentimes happens by straining and wringing them, and by inducing Pain in the first place, causes such a plentiful Afflux of Matter, that they become extremely stiff and lame; and by reason of the Multiplicity of Nerves, which occasions an exquisite Sense; and moreover, because of the Compactness of the Sinews, and likewise by reason of their dependent Situation, the Obstructions must therefore be the more difficult to be removed, but are apt to lay the Foundation of all those Infirmities to which the Legs and dependent Parts are obnoxious.

And hence we may observe, how the *Air*, *Meat* and *Drink*, *Motion* and *Rest*, may be profitable or hurtful to the Animal Body; and likewise how the same Effects may also, tho' not immediately, happen from the Opposites, *Motion* and *Rest*, *Abstinence* and full *Feeding*; as also from the Extremes of the *Air*, as it may be too thin and rarify'd, or over-much condensed; and moreover, how all those *Non-naturals*, already explain'd, may have reciprocally the same Effects; that is, *Food* and *Abstinence*, *Motion* and *Rest*, oftentimes cause the same Changes on the Animal Body, as a too thin or too thick *Air*; but *Sleep* and *Watching* have, for the most part, Effects contrary to each other.

When



When an Animal is asleep, there is a Cessa-<sup>Sleep.</sup>tion from all manner of Action, and this is the Time which is chiefly allotted to repair all the Wastes made on the Body by Exercise: For by Sleep the Blood is brought into an uniform and regular Motion, and flows equally into all Parts, without being determined to this or that particular Member, as is usual in bodily Action: So that all those Fibres that have been abraded and wore by their Motion, are again repaired, while the Blood passes and repasses gently, and without Hurry: All which is effected, while the Animal Faculty is at Rest, and the Spirits move calmly to their several Functions, and the smallest Vessels are then equally and moderately filled, whereby the Secretions are regularly performed; and in Sleep, a great deal of the excrementitious Matter is in a kindly manner cast off by insensible Transpiration; and while all the empty Spaces are thus equally filled, and the Superfluities cast off, the Body is not only repaired of all its Wastes, but exceedingly refresh'd and invigorated. On the other hand, too much Sleep very much impairs the natural Faculties, it spoils the Appetite and Digestion, and renders the Blood viscid and thick; from whence proceed Inactivity and Sluggishness, and many of the same Inconveniencies that happen from the ill Management of Diet and Exercise; and sometimes, as in Lethargick Disorders, it brings the Animal Faculties to an absolute Cessation, and thereby proves mortal.

Watching produces many of the contrary Watching: Effects. It stops the Secretions, causes Heat and Feverishness, disorders the Brain, and oftentimes brings on a Deliriousness, with many



other Symptoms too tedious to be mention'd. And as by much Sleep the Blood is rendred extraordinary viscid and thick, so in Watchfulness it becomes over-much rarify'd and thin, whereby the Animal Spirits are separated in an over-great Quantity; and are sent forth in such a Manner, that they destroy and waste the Body by their extraordinary Hurry and Activity.

Things  
excreted  
or retain-  
ed.

We are now to consider what relates to Things *excreted* and *retained*, which have also been accounted by all Writers among the *Non-naturals*: Tho' this Subject is so much mixed with what we have been already treating of, that there needs be little said of it; and indeed all the Errors with respect to Excretion or Retention, are commonly owing to some Fault in the other Non-naturals, excepting what relates to the Retention or Emission of the Seed.

It is very plain, that the Retention or Excretion of the Dung, Urine, or Sweat, or of any other excrementitious Matter, is, for the most part, originally owing to some Fault in the *Air*, *Feeding*, or *Exercise*, *Sleep* or *Watching*; and what ill Properties may be in the Matter it self, are commonly derived from the same Cause: But the Emission of Seed being, in many respects, a voluntary Action, whereunto all Creatures are prompted by Nature for the Conservation of their Species, it is therefore to be considered distinctly and apart from all other Secretions.

Of the  
Retenti-  
on and E-  
mission of  
the Seed.

Those who read the Experiments of *Sanctorius*, in his Book of Aphorisms, entitled, *Medicina Statica*, will see how much the Retention or Emission of the Seed affects the Secretions, and



and consequently in what manner the one or the other may be beneficial or detrimental to the Body of any Animal. But yet an exact and perfect Judgment cannot be form'd with respect to all Animals, because the Retention or Emission of the Seed may affect one after a different manner from what it may do another.

Some Species of Animals are more prompted to Acts of this Kind than others; and the Air and Climate in some Countries disposes Animals of the same Species to be more forward to Acts of Generation, than is common in other Countries. And we find by Experience, that in this respect there is also a very great Difference among Animals of the same Species in the same Country. And besides the peculiar Dispositions of Animals, which are, no doubt, to be consider'd, there is also a great deal owing to the Food, and other Management; for by this means we find the same Animal oftentimes more disposed to Love at one Time than another. The Season of the Year is also to be regarded, as many of the Brute Creatures are more propense to Enjoyments of this Kind in the Spring than at other Times, when it is also look'd upon to be beneficial to them. But our Business at present is only to consider the Inconveniences that happen, when those Acts are over-much indulged, or when they are too much neglected, abstracted from those Particulars.

In all Acts of this Kind, the Blood is put into a violent Hurry; and that Hurry is more or less, according as the Desire is more or less violent: So that the Mind or Sensitive Part in Brute Creatures becomes also a Partner in these  
Enjoy-



Enjoyments, as the Animal Spirits are agreeably agitated and employ'd; and this Motion of the Blood and Spirits being join'd with an exquisite Sense of Pleasure, causes a more than ordinary Rarefaction of both, whereby that Portion of the Blood, which was before languid and slow, and in a manner stagnated in the smallest Vessels, is protruded and thrust forwards by the *anterior* Fluid. The Heart is oftner contracted, and the Course of Circulation oftner perform'd than is usual at other Times, whereby the perspirable Matter is thrown off in greater Quantity than ordinary, by which means the Body becomes much refreshed. But if this be performed with a violent Propensity, and Excess of Eagerness, or if the Action be too frequently repeated in a short Space of Time, or if the Animal be of a tender and delicate Constitution, too great a Quantity of Matter will then be apt to perspire, which will be accompany'd with too great a Waste of the Animal Spirits; and unless that be soon supply'd with Rest, it will be apt to occasion divers Disorders. Sometimes it causes Heat and Inflammation, particularly in the Stomach, as the Blood is not easily return'd from its small and compact Fibres, which for some time impairs both the Appetite and Digestion; and if due Care be not taken, it will be apt to bring the Animal into a simple inflammatory Fever. On the other hand, such an Excess of Venery, where the Body is plethorick and full, with all the Vessels cramm'd, may readily enough bring the Body into putrid and malignant Distempers, and expose it to all the other Distempers subsequent to them. Sometimes the Parts of Generation

them-



themselves, when they are over-much drain'd by frequent Embraces, turn relaxed and weak, and then an involuntary Emission will ensue, which in the *Farrier's* Terms is call'd, a Shedding of the Seed; and this induces Debility and Weakness, which exposes the Body to waste, and become Consumptive.

The Consequences that usually happen from a Retention of the Seed, are *Plenitude* and *Fulness*, with the Accidents arising from thence; which have been already explain'd. If a Horse, in this Condition, has Mares frequently exposed to him without Enjoyment, it causes a disorder'd Imagination, which is sometimes accompany'd with such an Anxiety, that he forsakes both Food and Rest, and is thereby exposed to divers Disorders.

The Seed of Animals is not to be accounted among the ordinary Secretions, because of the singular Use for which it is ordained. Most others are indeed nothing but bare Excrements, and when once they are severed and separated from the Blood, and deposited into their proper Receptacles, are fit for nothing but to be cast off. But as the Seed is made up of such Principles as are adapted to the Formation of each Species; so there is no doubt but it contains the most pure and excellent Part of the Blood that comes into those Parts; and for that Reason also, requires more frequent and repeated Circulation after a Discharge, before the Loss of it is again repair'd. And this is probably the Occasion of that Weakness and Debility, which happens to some Animals after frequent Copulation; so on the other hand, it is not to be doubted, but by a Retention thereof there may be caused a Luxuriancy in the Blood, as  
also



also a Roving of the Inclinations, which may, besides a bare Plenitude, cause also some peculiar Disorders, such as have been taken Notice of in the Experience of some ancient Writers in Physick; and these may reasonably enough be said to be peculiar, as well as some Disorders of the Head, which proceed from the Distemperature of another noble Secretion, *viz.* the Animal Spirits, which, when they are not separated as they ought to be, by reason of a more than ordinary Viscidity of the Blood, cause *Lethargies* and *Palsies*; and when by an over Rarefaction of the Blood they are more liberally secern'd than they ought to be, they are then sent forth in an over-great Quantity, or in disorderly Manner, whereby they occasion Restlessness, *Frenzies*, and other Maladies.

But as the Seed of all Animals is made of Blood, and the Blood generated of the Aliment, so a great Part of that Luxuriancy may, no doubt, be prevented by a careful Management of their Diet. A Stallion ought to be well fed, the better to enable him to his Business; but Stone-Horses, who are withheld from Mares, should be kept more sparingly, and also have more Exercise given them, as shall be shewn in its proper Place. I shall only take Notice further, with respect to the Retention or Emission of Seed, that when either the one or the other is habitual, the Body is not so sensibly injured thereby, tho' it receives not much Benefit. And therefore, if a Horse be altogether restrained and kept from Mares, he will not suffer by the Retention of his Seed; but, on the other hand, if he was to be fully indulged after such a Restriction, he would at first be apt to turn indisposed by it,  
because



because the Novelty of the Thing must, no doubt, cause a more than ordinary Eagerness; and this uncommon Propensity may readily give a too violent Shock to the Constitution, by the great Hurry it puts the Blood and Spirits into; and I am the more ready to give into this, not only as it is easy to be accounted for, but in regard I have known Disorders happen to Men from this very Cause, as I have known others who have indulged themselves freely in Venereal Exercises, suffer at first from the Want of them: And the Reason why the continual Use of those Things is the less hurtful to such Persons, must, no doubt, proceed from Habit; tho' when it is immoderate, it must be of ill Consequence, and by Degrees waste the Constitution, notwithstanding, as in many other ill Habits, the Consequences are not so soon discerned.

As to the *Affections* of the Mind, which are also ranked among the Non-Naturals, they are certainly, when consider'd with respect to Man, of as much Importance as any other; for, besides the more noble Use of those Faculties, the Effects they have upon the Body are very remarkable. The alternate Passions of Fear, Hope, Pleasure, and Pain, and many other Affections, are of great Benefit to us; tho' any of them, when they are either too violent, or of too long Continuance, are very prejudicial to our Constitutions. Sudden Fear strikes such a Damp upon the Spirits, that it puts the Body into the most dismal Disorders, and causes such a Cessation of the Animal Faculty, that it has been, in many Instances, accompany'd with sudden Death. And as Fear chills and enervates the whole Animal System; so Hope no less heats

The Affections of the Mind.



heats it into a Fever, unless that wear off in a moderate Time, or be temper'd and allay'd with some contrary Passion. Neither are we more able to bear the Excesses of Pleasure and Pain; every one knows that Pain is an uneasy Sensation, and by the Disorder it puts the Body into, becomes often insupportable; but tho' Pleasure is a contrary Affection, yet notwithstanding all its Allurements, it greatly overpowers us, when it chanches at any Time to be too violent, or too lasting, by the extraordinary Restlessness and Activity it causes in the Animal Spirits; and the same may be observed of Anger, or any other violent Passion. From whence it is very plain, that our Health may be very much preserved by a right Disposition of our Mind, or may be greatly injured when it is otherwise, as the Mind has, at all Times, a great Influence upon the Body.

How they  
affect  
Horses  
and other  
Brute  
Crea-  
tures.

But we find Brute Creatures are in those respects very different from Men. They have, indeed, their several Passions and Affections, and of all the Brutal Kind, Horses seem to be the most remarkable, as they approach the nearest to us in many of their Affections. We may perceive in Horses, Fear and Courage, Love and Aversion; and in many of them we observe a great deal of Gentleness, which is commonly the Effect of their Courage, and resembles that Greatness of Mind which we may sometimes take Notice of in Persons of a heroick Disposition; and we may also take Notice of several other Affections in them, which bear a near Affinity to ours; but there is this Difference, as Horses want the Use of Reason, so of Consequence their Passions cannot be so lasting. Reason enables us to reflect on Things past, and  
from



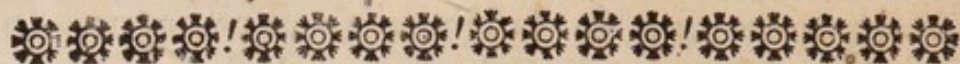
from thence oftentimes to form a Judgment of many Things that may come to pass hereafter; and our Minds are raised or depressed, according as we are persuaded of Good or Evil to come upon us. And it is the same in many other Instances, that the Mind of Man suffers either Pleasure or Pain from Reflection. But the Passions and Affections of Brute Creatures, as they are not so lasting and permanent, so they cannot have so powerful an Influence upon their Constitutions. Some Passions in Horses, such as their Love and Courage, not only render them the more serviceable to us, but likewise tend greatly to their own Preservation; for when they are not excessive, they prevent them from many outward Accidents and Injuries to which they are exposed; especially from such as proceed from Fear and Rage, as these render them untractable and impatient.

But tho' it be certain, that the Passions of Brute Creatures are not usually of long Continuance; yet we see some so much addicted to one particular Vice, that they are seldom at any Time free from it: Some Horses are so fur-  
 ly, that until they be perfectly master'd, they will suffer no Person to come near them; and there are others which have given the greatest Demonstrations of their Anxiety for the Loss of their Keeper, and sometimes for the Want of their usual Companions, that they have for a Time forsaken their Food, and have pined away very much before that Anxiety could be overcome. And there are some Horses and Mares, who have no less shewn the same Disposition, when their Desires have been eager to amorous Congresses. And the same is no less observable in many other Brute Creatures:  
 But

Some  
Horses  
strongly  
addicted  
to one sin-  
gle Vice.



But these Instances being not very frequent, we are only to look upon them as a peculiar Instinct, and what does not fall under our present Examination; which relates chiefly to what we may generally take Notice of, with respect to their common and ordinary Affections. See *Chap. V.* towards the End.



## C H A P. V.

*Of the Food of Horses, and the Vices some are addicted to in Feeding.*

**H**AVING in some of the preceding Chapters, laid down the necessary Preliminaries for the right Knowledge of a Horse's Body, Temper, and Constitution, with the Accidents and Changes to which it is obnoxious from the *Air, Diet, Motion, and Rest*, and the other *Non-naturals*; we judged it might not be unnecessary, before we proceed to the particular ordering of Horses, with respect to those Things, to take some Notice, in the first place, of their proper Food; and the Vices to which some are addicted in Feeding; and herein we intend to be the more brief, since a great deal relating to the particular Kinds of Food is sufficiently known to every ordinary Groom; and moreover, as their Diet is to be more particularly consider'd in the ensuing Chapters.

The Food of Horses different in all Countries,

All Countries have the Food of their Horses, as also the Way of ordering their Diet and Exercise, somewhat different from each other. But the Difference of Diet is so small in all Nations,



Nations, that a Horse of any distant Country soon takes to the Food of that Soil whereinto he is transported. It is said, that in some of the *Eastern* Countries, to save their Mares, and to render their Colts the more strong and durable, they nourish them with Camel's Milk; after which, as among us, they are turned into proper Pastures. Both *Spain* and *Barbary* have also very good Pastures, tho' in some mountainous Places they are, in scorching Weather, forced to travel wide, in order to pick out the green Herb in Places that are shaded by Rocks. The hard Meat of those Countries consists chiefly of Barley and Wheat-Straw, with which also some outlandish Horses are also fed when they come first to *England*, before they be season'd to Hay and Oats.

Hay is the most convenient and suitable Food Hay for the Horses of our own Country, whether those which are kept in the Stable, or those which travel and labour; and no Part of the World produces more Hay, and there is none reckoned so good. And that Kind of Food is the more necessary to our Horses, because as we are remote from the Influence of the Sun in Winter, so our Grass at that Time is very weak, and affords but little Nourishment; besides that our Grounds are wet and miry in many Places, because of the Thickness of the Air, which would greatly expose all such Horses as have been delicately kept.

Hay has, no doubt, different Properties, according to the Difference of Soil on which it grows, and likewise according as the Ground happens to be more or less enriched, and manured. That which the Fields about *London* produce, participate alike with all the other

Of the  
Diffe-  
rence in  
Hay, ac-  
cording to  
the seve-  
ral Soils.



Vegetables, which spring up in those Parts from the Strength of Dung ; and is therefore of higher Growth, and of a larger Stem , than what we meet with in the more distant Counties, which is commonly more natural and sweet, and dries of a better Colour : Notwithstanding, there are some who commend and prefer the former as the best ; though I am of Opinion , by its Rankness, it can hardly afford such kindly Nourishment, as that which is more simple, and produced of a more kindly Soil.

There is a great Variety and Difference in Hay, as the Grass whereof it is made abounds more or less with Medicinal Herbs. That which grows on the Banks of some Rivers, oftentimes abounds with Herbs which are hot, and exceeding pungent upon the Tongue; and for that Reason the Hay, when it is carefully dry'd, is very good for Horses of heavy, unactive Dispositions ; but that Kind is more fit for Pasture, than to be made into Hay. Where much Clover abounds, the Hay is commonly very nourishing, and brings a Horse in a short Time into good Order, excepting where there is some previous Indisposition besides the bare Want of Flesh. The Grass on some Commons is also very fattening, and the Hay which grows in dry Bottoms near some dry and barren Heaths, tho' it is but of small Growth and Stem, yet it may doubtless be a very proper Food, where there is the Suspicion of a Horse's falling into an inward Waste ; because in those Parts usually grow many pectoral Herbs, such as *Maidenhair*, *Fern* and *Polypody* ; and the Grass participates of the same Nourishment, and may therefore partake more or less of  
of



of the same Virtues. Asses and Goats delight most to feed on such Pastures; and it has probably been from hence, that their Milk has been of so great Account for Consumptive Persons.

The Hay, which is made on very wet Grounds, is chiefly fit for Oxen and Kine; which, altho' they can eat good Hay as well as Horses, yet they are not so easily injured by that which is bad. This Kind of Hay frequently looks black, as it is but seldom well got. That which grows on Grounds which consist of a very stiff Clay, rises very much into Stem, and proves oftentimes but indifferent, has a pale Look, and is full of Straw and Weeds.

If it was possible to dry Hay in the Shade, it would retain much more of the Virtues of the Herbs, than when it is dry'd in the Sun, and would therefore be more cordial and invigorating to the Spirits; besides that it would be of a most beautiful Green Colour, and of a most fragrant Smell. For the Sun exhales and draws out of all cut Herbs the cordial Virtues, wherein the smell and Fragrancy consists; but we are forced, because of the Uncertainty of the Weather, to take the readiest Opportunity of getting in our Hay, in regard the Rain rots it, which is of much greater Prejudice than the Heat of the Sun. Howbeit, in some high Grounds, where the Air is moderated with gentle Gales, and the excessive Heat abated by the *Convexity* of the Hills, the Hay is as fragrant and green, as if it was dry'd under a Shade. And we observe, all Horses delight most to eat such Kind of Hay, which, no doubt, affords the best and most kindly Nou-



ishment: And there is but this Inconvenience in it, that Horses, when they are used to such Hay, often turn dainty, and are unwilling to eat any other.

We need say but little in this Place concerning Grass; all the Properties that have been ascribed to the Hay, are retained in it; besides that it abounds more with the Nitre of the Earth, which renders it exceeding refreshing and cooling in that Season of the Year, when it is proper by reason of the Heat of the Weather. That Kind of Grass, which is observed to scour Horses most, abounds with many Antiscorbutick Herbs, which renders it very fit for gross, unactive Horses; but it is sometimes prejudicial to those of brisk, hot, and lively Dispositions. But of this we intend to take some farther Notice in its proper Place.

Straw. *Straw* is another Kind of Food, which is sometimes given to Horses, and is looked upon to be very wholesome; and certainly it must be so to those who stand much in the Stable, and are without proper Exercise. In *Scotland*, and some of the *Northern* Counties of *England*, they feed all their ordinary Horses with Oat-Straw, instead of Hay; and indeed I have seen some of them thrive wonderfully upon it; and there are of the plain *Scots* Galloways, when they come first into *England*, that can hardly be brought to eat Hay, until they are used to it by Degrees. The Straw of those Parts is of a very fine Stem and thin Reed, and oftentimes mixed with Grass and Herbs of several Kinds, which, no doubt, renders it the more hearty. But, in the *South* Parts of *England*, they use Wheat-Straw, from the Example of foreign Countries;

What  
Kinds are  
used, and  
in what  
Manner.



Countries; and that only upon some extraordinary Occasions, to cleanse Horses, for which it is certainly very proper. When a Horse has stood long in the Stable at full Feeding, he is apt to turn hot and costive, and his Excrements become Hard; and for want of being discharged, and likewise by reason of the Blood's Viscidity, which must also happen from the same Cause, the Moisture of the Guts becomes glutinous, which being mixed with the Excrements, fastens them so, that they can hardly be removed; in this Case, Wheat-Straw, when chopped and joined to a Horse's Provender, cuts the Viscidities, and renders the Dung prickly, like a Tazel, whereby it brings that slimy Matter along with it; and it is by this means, that chopped Straw scours a Horse, and is, in many Cases, better than the Use of any purging Medicine to those who will eat it.

The other Kinds of Food made Use of in the Diet of Horses, are, as every one sufficiently knows, *Barley, Oats, Beans, Pease, Fitches*, and sometimes, tho' very rarely, *Rye*. In *Spain* and *Italy*, and some other *Southern* Countries, they use little or no other Provender besides *Barley*, as has been observed. But their *Barley* is of a longer, tho' more slender Grain, and of more compact Substance, than what this Country commonly produces, and may therefore afford more solid Nourishment; but with respect to a Horse's ordinary Food, there is a great deal in Habit, as he has been used from his Folage to the eating of this or that Sort. *Barley* is of an emollient, soft Nature, and yet gently deterfive, and is certainly very good for the *Lungs, Livor, Kidneys*, or rather principal Bow-els.



els. But in a Country where there is such Plenty of Oats, which are more nourishing, there needs be little Use made of Barley in common Diet, but in a physical Way, especially since there is so great a Consumption of it in our Malt. Some Parts of the Kingdom produce no Grain so much as Oats, which probably may be the Reason why they have come to be used as our chief Provender; besides that in very ancient Times it was not customary to cultivate Wheat and some other Grains among us.

Oats?

Which  
are the  
best.

Of the two Kinds of Oats, the Black are generally preferred; but is no great Matter which be made Use of, provided they be of a firm Grain, well ripened and got, and feel weighty. Those which grow in the *Northern* Counties, and in many Places of *SCOTLAND*, are commonly the best, excepting when there has been a cold Season, that they are obliged to cut them down before they are thoroughly ripen'd. The Grain in those Parts is commonly small and slender, exceeding hard, and of a thin Shell; and their black Oats are somewhat bearded. Oats are certainly a very proper Diet for our Horses, and nothing agrees so well with them, as we find by daily Experience. Most old Authors have accounted them heating, probably because they leave a Warmth upon the Palate more than most other eatable Grains; but in their last Effects they are cooling, as they have some Efficacy on the Secretions of Sweat and Urine. And they must be the more agreeable to the Constitutions of our Horses, as also to those in other *Northern* Climates, that they are somewhat warm in their first Effects.

Some Observations concerning them.

Many



Many Things are attributed to Food, which are owing to some Error in the other Non-Naturals; wherefore, when a Horse turns constive, and his Excrements grow hard and black, he is oftentimes thought to be over-heated with too much Oats. An over-great Quantity of any Kind of Food may certainly have this Effect: But it is no less certain, the same may happen when he has not had sufficient Exercise. The same may no less fall out upon catching Cold, or when some Fault in the Air hurts the Secretions: All which Things ought to be well weigh'd and consider'd in the Dieting of Horses.

*Wheat* is never at any Time given to our Horses, except in some Case of great Necessity, where other Grains are not to be had; but that happens not once in an Age. *Blundevill* relates, that when King *Philip* of Spain came over to England, the Spaniards gave their Jennets no other Provender but Wheat, which occasion'd a very great Murmuring among the common Artificers, and other mean People, because at that Time there was a great Scarcity of Corn. Wheat affords much greater Nourishment than Oats; but it is not only too dear, but very improper for ordinary Provender, and could not be digested without great Exercise, because of its viscid and glutinous Quality, which makes it hard to go through the first Passages; and therefore is seldom comply'd with, but when fermented and baked, which renders it more light and easy to digest. Flower is, indeed, much used in Horse-Balls to knit and bind them into a due Consistence; but, then, it is usually qualified with Oil or Honey, which makes it pass easily thro' the Guts. Wheat-Bran has so much

Wheat given to our Horses.

Its Effects.



of the Husk, as renders it very proper to scour and cleanse a Horse's Entrails. The Flower in the Bran is that which is the least viscid, and the Husk scours and brings all away with it, unless the Disorder in those Parts be of a long Standing.

Beans.

*Beans* are a very strong Food, and afford great Nourishment, for which Reason they are often split, and given to our Horses, sometimes with their Oats, and sometimes with Bran; but being of very hard Digestion, they are chiefly for Horses that are Robust, and require strong Nourishment, or for those that labour and work hard; which, as they are also restrained from eating, excepting at certain Times of the Day, so they require that Kind of Food which is lightest of Digestion. When Beans are given constantly to Horses which have little Exercise, or to such as are somewhat delicate, the best Way is, no doubt, to mix them with Bran; because, when they do not digest readily, they breed Crudities in the Stomach and Guts, which is accompany'd with a slimy Matter, that harbours and entangles the Wind, whereby such Horses oftentimes become troubled with Flatulencies in their Bowels, which lay them obnoxious to Gripes and Colick Pains; and likewise lay the Foundation of an ill Habit of Body, by rendring the Blood gross and viscid; but this is, in a great Measure, prevented by the Mixture of Bran, as the latter scours all the Passages in the Manner as has been described. Those Beans are the best, which are old and hard; for when they are new, they are extremely surfeiting.

Pease.

*Pease* are somewhat of the same Nature with Beans, differing only in Degree; when they are very old, they afford good Nutriment, but  
when



when they are new, they are liable to the same Inconveniencies as the Beans. I knew a Jockey who always prefer'd old black Pease to Beans, and said, he had observed from Experience, that they fatten'd full as well, if not better, and digested easier with young Horses than the other. *Fitches* are cleansing, and somewhat Diuretick, and for that Reason, they may be liable to fewer of such Inconveniencies than either of the other: But these are not plentiful enough in all Places to be given to Horses; and if they were, few would comply with that Diet in a Country where there is such an Abundance of other Provender.

*Rye* is seldom made Use of, and when it is, *Rye.* our Horsemen commonly mix it with other Provender, to answer in the same Intentions as Bran. *Rye* is certainly very deterfive and cleansing, yea, more than any of our other Grains; and may, therefore, be very properly given now and then to Horses which stand much in the Stable.

The other Kinds of Diet administred to Horses, made up of several Mixtures, are not in frequent Use, but are oftentimes more owing to Conceit, than to any good Reason. Scalded Bran, and sometimes Mashcs of Malt, are given; but these are chiefly upon the catching of Cold, or when a Horse is costive, to loosen him; or upon Suspicion of some other Disorder creeping upon him, wherein they are often of great Service, by way of Prevention, when comply'd with in Time.

The *Sieur De Solleysell*, and some few other Writers, have laid down the Quantities which ought to be given of Hay, Straw, and Oats, as an ordinary Allowance to the Horses of different

The mix'd  
Diet of  
Horses.

Concern-  
ing the  
Quantity  
of their  
Food.

ferent



ferent Kinds and Sizes; as also, according to the different Services required of them. However, they don't prescribe those Rules as absolutely to be follow'd in all Cases, but to vary and change with Time and Occasion; for which Reason, I shall not rehearse them, but lay down the following general Considerations, which, I judge, will be no less useful.

All young  
Horses de-  
avour more  
Food than  
those that  
are mid-  
dle aged.

And, *First*, We may take Notice, that young Horses have much stronger Appetites than Horses that are come to their full Maturity; and, therefore, if they be indulged in Feeding, they will readily cram and gorge themselves, and so become surfeited: And to this are, no doubt, owing many of the Accidents that happen to young Horses; and as it is the Ambition of most Persons to have their Horses look fat and plump, they think they can never give them a sufficient Quantity of Food. There are many young Horses, even as there are other Creatures, which can by no means be made fat; and unless there be some particular Disposition in the Muscles and Hip Bones, all the Feeding in the World will never make them well gascoin'd, neither will any Horse be perfectly form'd in this Respect, until he arrives to his full Maturity: And for these Reasons, it would be in vain for the Owner to strive against Nature; but if such be kept from Labour, they ought also to be kept to a somewhat spare Diet, and their Rack suffered to be sometimes empty; but if they be put to Exercise, they may, no doubt, be liberally fed.

2. Some Horses naturally require more Food than others, especially those which from a long  
Habit



Habit perspire very much, or have the other <sup>Those</sup> Discharges of Dung and Urine more plentiful <sup>which</sup> than is common. This is sometimes a Defect <sup>perspire</sup> in the Constitution of a Horse; which, when <sup>much, re-</sup> it happens to be so, may be known by this <sup>quire fre-</sup> Sign, That upon abridging his Diet, he will <sup>quent</sup> soon grow lean, and out of Heart, his Spirits <sup>feeding.</sup> will flag, and his Coat grow rough; whereas a Horse that has too much Food given him, will grow more brisk and lively when he is somewhat abridged.

3. There are Horses, which altho' they be naturally great and plentiful Eaters, yet their Constitutions are not bad. These may be, no <sup>Plentiful</sup> doubt, indulged, excepting when they lose their <sup>Eaters,</sup> Vigor and Activity, and begin to grow pur- <sup>how to be</sup> sive, which causes them to strain and labour <sup>managed.</sup> when they are put to any Action, and is always the first visible Effect of over-much Food; for which Reason, all Horses in this Condition ought either to be somewhat abridged in their Diet, or to be dieted with Food which does not afford over-much Nourishment: But Horses which eat voraciously, and yet cannot be supported with it, but continue dead-hearted, low in their Spirits, and slow in Action, are commonly good for little. These, for the most part, labour under an ill Habit of Body, tho' there be sometimes no outward Appearance of Sicknes.

4. There are some Horses which have been <sup>Some old</sup> of great Service, and when they grow aged, <sup>Horses</sup> like some old People, their Stomachs increase; <sup>great</sup> and will not only eat Abundance of Corn, if <sup>Eaters.</sup> their Teeth have not failed them, but you shall at all other Times find them eating Hay. It is certain,



certain, many old Horses cannot be supported without a great deal of Food, because with Age the Animal Faculty abates. Many of the Vessels become subfided, and the Vessels of the Stomach oftentimes become hard and tense; and altho' the Muscular Action is not so brisk, yet by reason of its Rigidity, its Sides grate on one another, which causes a perpetual craving, when the Stomach is the least empty; and as a great deal of what they eat does not pass into Nourishment, because many of the Chyle Vessels are obstructed or subfided, but goes off in Dung; these ought, therefore, to be indulged, and not too much restrained, if their Services be answerable; but when their Teeth grow bad, and their Jaws weak and slow, their Oats may be sometimes scalded.

The middle Age the most certain Time to determine the Quantity of a Horse's Food.

5. As the Prime, or Middle Age of a Horse is the Time which most certainly determines the Quantity of a Horse's Eating; so we may then be most certain as to his daily Allowance. By the Middle Age, computing the Life of a Horse to be half the Age of Man, that must last from Ten to Twenty; tho' this also differs according to the Difference of Constitution and Management; there being many, which, with proper Care, will continue longer, without much Alteration, as there are others that decline much sooner. Young Horses require a greater Quantity of Food, as that is necessary for the Accretion and Growth of their Bodies, which makes the Quantity of their Diet somewhat difficult to be ascertained; nor, indeed, can it be rightly order'd, without a due *Oeconomy* be also observed in their Exercise, and other Points of Manage-



Management; as Exercise is no less natural to them, while under Age, than their Food; which is plainly manifest, from their active, playful Disposition, especially when we see them at their full Liberty: And old Horses must also be indulged in eating, for the Reasons already given. But when Horses are arrived to their Prime, their Bodies are then come to their full Dimension and Size; and as their Discharges are uniform and equal, very near the same Quantity of Food supports them at all Times, excepting when a Change of Exercise or Air causes a Difference; or, if perchance, some Accident happens, that may in Time cause an habitual Change in their Constitutions.

In that Period of their Age, their Appetites are lessened, because the Necessity of Food is no longer to increase their Bulk, but to maintain it in that uniform State whereunto it is arrived; and as a large body'd Horse, no doubt, requires a greater Quantity of Food to nourish him, than one that is small, or of an ordinary Size; so therefore we may, in most Cases, proportion a Horse's Food accordingly.

But yet this is no certain Rule with respect The Quantity of Food sometimes determined by their Size, but not always. to all Horses, because we find those of a moderate Size devour as much Food as those which are much larger; and there are some Horses of a certain Configuration and Make, particularly those that are gaunt Sided, and of lean, slender Muscles, which will consume more Food than those which are fat and large; but there are many Horses, about their Middle Age, which will not injure themselves with Food, as those that are Young; and we may often observe them about that Time exceeding temperate, notwithstanding they go through a great deal of Exercise



**Exercise and Labour.** It must, therefore, be a great Error for Persons to complain of Horses for not eating a great deal, especially when they are arrived to their full Age; since it is oftentimes no other than a peculiar Temperance, which is natural to some Horses more than others, and which is more particularly observable at that Period of their Age, more than at any other Time.

Some Persons over-solicitous about their Horses.

When those Things are not duly consider'd, they prove oftentimes the Cause why those, who have received it as a Maxim, that a Horse should always have a good Stomach, from thence run into many Errors, and makes them frequently tamper with their Horses, when there is not the least Occasion so to do. Many Persons, when they observe their Horses full of Flesh, and at the same Time but moderate Eaters, conclude their Want of Stomach to proceed from Rankness of Blood; and, for that Reason, they have immediate Recourse to Bleeding and Purging, notwithstanding, upon a strict Examination, they would be found perfectly sound. It is, indeed, for the most part, a good Sign in any Horse to eat heartily; but yet no Man can judge rightly of a Horse's Health or Constitution meerly from the Quantity of Food he devours, without examining at the same Time into the other concurring Signs. When a Horse keeps up his Flesh, maintains the same Degree of Vigor and Activity, and is able to go through the same Services which are usual to him, we may conclude that he is in perfect good Order, notwithstanding his Stomach may be very moderate; and, therefore, we ought not to be too busy with Physical Methods, which are, more or less, a  
Vio-



Violence to Nature, however carefully managed; but when we observe, with a small Appetite, a Decay of a Horse's Strength and Vigor also; and that he is unable to go through those Services that are usual to him, or may be required of him, from the Signs taken from his outward Appearance, we may then reasonably conclude, there may be some beginning Distemper; wherefore we ought diligently to enquire into the Cause thereof, according to the Rules that have been already laid down for that Purpose. And because the Use of Physick is by no means to be preferr'd, where a right *O Economy* of the *Non-Naturals* will do the Business, we are in the first place to examine, whether he has not, previous to this, been at any Time harraßed, and put beyond his Strength; in which Case, he ought, no doubt, to have Rest, and his Exercise should only be walking for an Hour or two every Day, and his Diet at the same Time moderate; but if there has been no Alteration in his Usage, the Matter will require to be more diligently searched into; and if he be one that is used to stand, unless the Fault proceeds from Pain and Foundering in his Feet, whether the outward Signs be *Repletion* and Fulness, or *Exhinanition* and Lowness of his Flesh; in either Case, the Use of Exercise is to be preferred; excepting only, that if he be costive, then one or more Clysters ought, no doubt, to be administered, which will sufficiently prepare the Body for moderate Exercise; which being duly comply'd with according to the Rules to be laid down hereafter, must, no doubt, bring a Horse into good Order, without any Medicinal Application.

From



From all which, it is plain, that the Food of Horses ought neither to be proportioned to a Horse's Size, nor to the Opinion we may have of his Strength ; but that an Eye ought chiefly to be had to his Age and Labour. We are certain, that not only young Horses, but the aged, require more Food ; and are also from the vigorous Appetite in the one, and a continual Craving in the other, more apt to be surfeited, than the Middle-aged ; and for that Reason, a more than ordinary Care ought to be taken of their Diet, that it be proportioned in such a Manner, as to keep up the same Medium with respect to bodily Disposition : And tho' a no less Diligence is to be observed with respect to Middle-aged Horses ; yet, as been taken Notice, unless they be ill-managed in other respects, they are not so apt to be injured by their Food.

Several Vices in a Horse's Feeding, not peculiar to any Period of his Age. There are indeed, (as express'd in our Title) several Vices whereunto Horses are addicted in Feeding, which are not particular to any Period of a Horse's Age, but are more or less common at all Times ; yet, when those are diligently enquired into, they will, for the most part, be found to be the Effect of some Indisposition, which at the same time may not be very perceivable from any outward Signs.

Voracious Eating, the Cause of it. Some Horses are exceeding voracious, and eat an unmerciful Quantity of Hay, whereby their Bellies become very much enlarged : But many of those are *Hide-bound*, or labour under some other ill Habit of Body, particularly some Disorder in their Stomachs, which causes a perpetual Craving after Food. *Solleysell* observes, that this voracious Appetite for Hay does not injure young Horses very much, tho' he does not



not give any Reason for it; but we have observed, that it is natural to all young Horses to have vigorous Appetites, even beyond what they are many times able to digest, whereby they fall into malignant and putrid Fevers; and the Consequence of these Disorders is, frequently, the Grease falling into their Legs, if not Death; and the same may sometimes be subsequent to a bare Plenitude, and Over-Fulness of Blood; but it is very certain, such as are growing will digest a great deal, and most of it turn to good Nourishment; and if they happen sometimes to be surfeited, yet, because of the Relaxation of the Vessels, common to all young Animals, it goes off more easily than if it was to happen afterwards, when their Vessels are more compact and firm, and consequently, not so easily stretched; whereby any Oppression must not only be burdensome, but the more lasting: Whereas the Relaxation of the Vessels in all young Animals gives way to the Glandular Discharges, either by Sweat or other Excrements, so that they soon wear off; and, as they have frequent Injuries from their Food, they have also, by their lax OEconomy, frequent Reliefs from Nature: But those Excesses ought not to be over-much indulged, because by them ill Habits are oftentimes induced, which are with great Difficulty overcome.

There is another Vice which some Horses are addicted to in Eating, called the *Tick*. Some <sup>The Tick very inconvenient.</sup> in eating their Oats, grind and spoil their Upper Jaw-Teeth against the Bottom of the Manger, and some their Lower Jaw-Teeth; some strike their Chin upon the Backside of the Manger, and others against the Foreside, whereby they lose a good Part of their Corn; and while



For the  
most part  
an ill Ha-  
bit.

they do this, they give a Belch through their Throat, which is that which we call Ticking. Some Horses Tick upon the Trench; and some Horses are so habited to it, that they will Tick upon any Post or Rail they can come at. This, no doubt, often proceeds from some itching Humour in those Parts, or else from some aching Pain which affects the Teeth and Jaws; which ought, when first perceived, to be rubb'd with Salt and Water, or with Spirit of Wine, or Brandy, and the Horse should be kept as much as possible at a Distance from any Place where he may have an Opportunity to continue in this ill Habit, which is exceeding hard ever to be removed; and because it is sometimes communicated by Example of other Horses, a Ticker ought, therefore, to stand by himself, especially from the Company of young Horses, which are most apt to give into ill Habits.

Mangling  
the Hay,  
another  
Vice.

Another Vice whereunto some Horses are addicted in Feeding, is, a mangling of their Hay. These are perpetually pulling from the Rack; but throw a great deal more among their Litter than they eat. Some continue in this Custom for a long Time, and others are observed to be thus dainty at all Times; but it oftentimes proceeds from bad Digestion, and takes its first Origin from an Over-Greediness, whereby they have been greatly surfeited; and, during this Niceness, they are continually endeavouring to pick out from among the Hay what is most agreeable and relishing, as we sometimes observe People of nice, weak Stomachs, who are able to eat nothing but what is savoury, are therefore at a great deal of Pains to humour their Appetites. These Horses are oftentimes not of great Service, because they do not eat  
what



what is sufficient to nourish them, and therefore they ought to be treated with those Things that are proper to restore lost Appetite; to which Purpose, the Reader may turn to the Diseases of the Stomach in our *Farrier's Guide*, where this Kind is distinguished from the Want of Appetite, which proceeds from a Fever, or other Accident, but above all, Horses in this Condition should have daily Exercise given them in a good open Air; and the rather, because I have known several of this Kind recover'd by Labour. Some Horses with good Stomachs have, as well as the others, a continual Use of pulling down their Hay among their Litter; but afterwards eat it up heartily enough. The best Way to cure them of this Habit is, to keep but a small Quantity at a Time in the Rack, and even to suffer it now and then to be empty, by which Means, they will fall a grinding as soon as they receive it into their Mouths.

But it is generally accounted another great Eating Vice, which some Horses are addicted to, and Litter not that is, when they eat their Litter. This, in- always a Vice. deed, may grow into a Vice by Habit; as may also the eating of dry'd Clay and Mud out of the Walls, tho' neither of them are, perhaps, so originally; but are, at first, commonly owing to some Indisposition. When a Horse eats his Litter, he ought to have chopt Straw given him in great Abundance; and when he eats dry Mud, he ought not to be altogether restrained from it, but may have soft Chalk, and other alkalious Substances, which he will also eat with great Profit; for in this Case, it is not improbable there may be some Acidity in his Stomach, which causes a Craving after those



those Things, as some Girls, after the Eating of sowre Fruits, crave to eat Sealing-Wax, Shells, Ashes, and many other Kinds of Trash, as contrary to their true Food; and the Eating of Litter, before it grows into a Habit, without doubt, denotes a Horse to want a rough, scouring Diet.

Observations concerning the Cravings of Animals after Things foreign to their common Food.

They who are acquainted with Natural History, cannot be insensible how much all the Brute Creatures, by a peculiar Instinct, betake themselves to those Things that are proper to relieve them in their Sickneses and Infirmities; and we may every Day observe many Instances of the same kind in those which are most familiar to us. Every one knows that Dogs and Cats, when they are surfeited, and their Stomachs loaded, betake themselves to the eating of rough Blades of Grass or Corn; which, by tickling their Throats, causes them to disgorge and throw up what is Offence to them. Many of the Fowls, as often as they find themselves surfeited, swallow Gravel; but those which eat Corn, especially the smaller Fowls, as *Partridges*, and even the *Sparrows*, pick up a certain Quantity of small Gravel as duly as their Food; notwithstanding, to our Apprehension, there is nothing in the Taste that can tempt them to it, yet, as it is absolutely necessary to the Digestion of their Food, and likewise to press down the Dung thro' their thin, slender Guts, which have little or no Force in their Peristaltick Motion; therefore Providence has, no doubt, endow'd them with a Faculty which renders it agreeable to them. Neither are Horses less wanting in those respects; for, besides the eating of Clay and Litter, we may observe some of them, when they are abroad, and at their



their Liberty, instead of the latter, eat the Thatch; and in some Places, dry'd Reeds which fall from small Cottages and Hovels, tho' there is no Nourishment can be expected from them. We may also observe, while they run at Grass, and fall into a Lax and Scouring, which some Horses do upon their first being turn'd out, and which also happens in some Pastures more than others: In that Case, they often pick off the green Bark from Trees and Shrubs, whose rough, astringent Juice soon binds their Bodies, and renders them able to feed with less Inconveniency. And on another Occasion, I have seen some break out of Inclosures, and eat an incredible Quantity of Hemlock, without the least Injury to them; notwithstanding, if a Horse was to eat it at an improper Time, it might be of very ill Consequence.

From all which it is manifest, that Abundance of those Things which are look'd upon to be Vices in a Horse's free Feeding, are oftentimes no other than what they are prompted to by Nature, from some Disorder they feel in themselves; and they are so well worth the observing, that if we were as careful in taking Notice of those Things in Horses, as we are of some other Animals that are of little or no Use to us, we might oftentimes from thence be assisted, not only in the true Knowledge of their Maladies, but in the properest Method that ought to be taken for their Recovery.



## C H A P. V.

*Of the Stable, and Offices belonging there-  
unto.*

**T**H O' there need not be much said concerning the Situation and Building of a Stable, while there are so many excellent Patterns not only about *London*, but at the Seats of divers of the Nobility and Gentry in all Parts of the Kindom; yet as the far greater Number are, in many respects, but indifferently contrived, and as some of the best are even wanting in some Particulars, I judged it might not be amiss to make some few Observations concerning the OEconomy that ought to be observed in our Stables, because a great deal relating to the Health and Welfare of Horses, depends upon the Conveniency and Suitableness of their Habitations.

The Air  
and Soil  
fit for a  
Stable.

*Solleysell* has given particular Directions about the Building of a Stable, and some of the Ancients have laid down Instructions concerning the Air and Soil; but in this respect we cannot be always at our Liberty, since every House where Horses are to be kept must have the Conveniency of a Stable as near as possible to it: But all Gentlemen usually take Care of those Things in the Situation of their own Dwellings, whereby the Building of the Stable is usually determined. Now, as in our Dwellings

The Size. we take Care that the Foundation be dry, so we should be no less solicitous about our Stables, especially, as many Horses suffer very much by the Injuries of a wet Situation. Some make



make their Stables exceeding large; and others, who like to have them warm, build them very small; but neither of these Extremes is proper; because a large Stable, unless it can be shut up very close, must be cold in Winter; and when it is too small, it exposes Horses to Danger as often as they are brought into the Air.

A Stable ought not to be, as some would have it, too dark; nor, according to *Vigétius*, an ancient Author, too lightsome; but as it is a Place of Rest and Feeding, nothing should be contrived to disturb Horses while they are in it, as happens sometimes when the Sun shines too much into them thro' the Windows and Cranies; besides that it must be prejudicial to their Eyes; neither can it be less detrimental in this respect, to have the Stable too dark, as the sudden and strong Impressions made by the Light upon their first coming out dazzles their Eyes, and thereby lays the Foundations of Rheums and Weaknesses.

I think it a Mistake in many Persons, who, in building their Stables, contrive to make the Cielings and Windows too low; for it must certainly be a very great Advantage to Horses, when both the one and the other are moderately raised; because when the Stable is high, and also of sufficient Breadth and Length, the Air is less confined, and must therefore be more pure and wholsome; and when the Windows are high, the Air does not strike so much on the Body of a Horse, as when they are low, but of Consequence must be more dispersed. This must, no doubt, keep Horses moderately warm in Winter, as it must no less contribute to keep them cool in Summer. But the worst Contrivance in a Stable is, a Number of little Cran-

What  
Light best  
for a Sta-  
ble.

And how  
the Win-  
dows  
should be  
built.



nies, or Air-holes, such as are observable in Barns; and when these happen near any Stall, as they frequently are in some ordinary Inns in the Country, they prove very prejudicial, as the Air, when it is collected into a narrow Compass, strikes with the greater Force, and when it darts upon a Horse's Limbs and Hips, may be apt to make him go lame; and if it strikes forward upon his Ears, or any Part of his Head, as happens in some odd contrived Stables, it may then render him liable to Colds and Morefounding.

*Solleyfell* advises the Windows to be made to the *North*, if possible: I suppose it must be for Coolness, to preserve them from the Heat of the Sun in Summer, which is, no doubt, very hurtful to all Horses who stand in the Stable, and are kept up in the hot Weather. But I think the Opinion of *Palladius* is to be preferred, who orders Windows to be made both to the *South* and *North*; and they should, no doubt, be so close and well fitted with Shutters, that the Heat in Summer may effectually be kept out, and the cold *Northern* Blasts in Winter.

In what  
Manner  
the Rack  
is to be  
placed.

The Rack should neither be placed too high nor too low; when it is too high, a Horse is apt to strain his Neck over-much in Feeding; and when it is too low, the Hay lies too much under his own Breath, which turns his Stomach against it; but I am of Opinion, it is not altogether a Horse's Breath which renders the Hay offensive to him, for that never makes a Horse forsake his Corn, but the Flavour of the Hay itself, which comes too powerful upon him, and may, no doubt, make him loathe it, even as we should be apt to loathe our own Food, if we were as long in Feeding, and were to  
hold



hold our Noses all the while over the Dish. The Position of the Rack is always best, when perpendicular or streight, for that not only keeps a Horse clean, as the Dust of the Hay is not so apt to fall upon his Head and Mane, as when it hangs obliquely over him; but as it prevents its falling into his Ears and Eyes, or flying up his Nostrils: But the Groom or Feeder should always be careful to open the Hay, and dust it well before he puts it before him. In many Places of *Italy* they use no Racks at all, but a Marble Case or Locker for Corn, which is broad above, and somewhat narrow at Bottom, and is placed within the Manger. The Hay is laid in the Spaces on each Side, which are grated underneath, that the Dust may fall through: But this Method has never taken place in these Kingdoms, unless among such as are more than ordinary curious and singular.

The Height of the Manger should be moderate, that it may fit Horses of several Sizes; <sup>The Man-</sup>ger. but some Gentlemen have their several Stables for different Horses, which is, no doubt, very convenient. There should always be sufficient Room between the Partitions, that the Horse may more easily lay himself to Rest, and the Groom have also Conveniency to feed and dress him.

The Floor may either be made of Planchers <sup>The</sup> of Oak, or smoothly paved, which Method is now <sup>Floor.</sup> mostly in Use, and is undoubtedly much the best; not only as a Horse stands more firmly upon such a Pavement, but as the Litter spreads better, and is not so apt to run into Rucks, which commonly happens upon a smooth planched Floor, unless the Bedding be made up to the Horse's Belly, and laid close to the Partitions  
on



on each Side. In all Stables a Descent is very proper from the Wall to the Gutter; but when the Floor happens to slope too much, it makes the Posture very uneasy; besides that, by standing long on such a Situation, a Horse would be apt to suffer in his Reins, or become batter'd in his Fore Feet; but most of our Stables are pretty well contrived in these respects.

The Situation with respect to Water.

The next Conveniency of a Stable, and a very great one, is Water; and where there is not a River or Brook, a Well is, no doubt, necessary. Well-Water is commonly hard, and for that Reason looked upon as injurious to the Animal Body in many respects. The Reason of its Hardness is from the mineral Particles the Springs imbibe from the Earth in their Passage thro' it; and these may be the more prejudicial, according as those Particles are in their Nature more or less pernicious; besides that, if the Well be deep, the Stagnation under Ground must render it the more unwholesome. Those Springs which arise out of chalky Ground are commonly the most safe for all Uses, because the Chalk imbibes many of those Mineral Particles, or blunts their Acidity; and for that Reason, the Wells about *Dunstable*, and several other chalky Countries, tho' some of them are very deep under Ground, yet the Water agrees very well with all those Horses that are kept constantly there, or travel those Roads: But in some Cases, where a Horse happens to be of a very lax Habit of Body, those hard Waters may be of Service for a Change, as they are the most apt to harden the Fibres of the Stomach, and create a better Digestion; but then the continuing in them, would probably make them fall short of that Efficacy.

The



The Effects of our Waters are, no doubt, the less discernible, that both our own Constitutions and those of our Horses are continually season'd to them; and what Distempers these may occasion, we are apt to ascribe to some other Cause, few or none being at Pains to make particular Observations and Experiments of their various Consequences and Effects, otherwise than by examining the Principles they contain. That Waters are oftentimes impregnated with such Minerals as render them injurious to the Bodies of Animals, cannot be disputed, after the many Experiments of all Ages, and the most authentick Writers of Natural History. The *Fons Ruber* in *Æthiopia* is not only recorded by those Writers, but by the Poets, for its deadly and soporiferous Effects; but the Waters of our own Country, tho' by no means so pernicious, yet they may, no doubt, be of different Efficacy on the *Animal* Body, and may even incline Horses to some particular Habits and Indispositions more than others; yet we are the less sensible of their real Effects from Experiences on the human Body, probably because of the Disproportions between the Vessels of a Horse and those of a Man, the first being much larger, and therefore may not so easily be injured by any *Heterogeneous* Mixture in their Water: But be that as it will, it must certainly be the safest Way to contrive not only our own Dwellings, but those of our Horses, in Places where the Water is both good and plentiful. As to the other Materials belonging to a Stable; such as Brushes, Curry-Combs, Mane-Combs, and the like, we need take no Notice of them in this Place, in regard they are sufficiently known to all Persons.

Some Observations concerning the Difference of Water.



## C H A P. VII.

*The Method of ordering Horses when they rest and stand constantly at Hard Meat.*

**U**Nder this Title we are to include chiefly what relates to the Feeding, Airing, Currying and Dressing of Horses, while the Owner has no immediate Service for them, or when the Season of the Year requires them most to be kept at home.

The Usefulness of Currying and Dressing.

After what has been already said in this, and our other Treatises, concerning Perspiration, there will be no great need of Arguments in Behalf of Currying and Dressing of Horses; but especially since it must be evident to every one's own Observation, that a Horse, who is not used to that decent and cleanly Way of keeping, not only looks rough and unpleasant to the Eye, but is also dull and sluggish, if compared with one who is kept well. Some of the first are, indeed, vicious enough; and they grow the more stubborn and untractable, that they are not handled, but they are not the more sprightly, but their Action clownish; and altho' some of them are, no doubt, the most hardy and durable in any kind of Labour, yet their Sickneses generally prove more fatal; for when a Horse is constantly kemped and curried, the Pores of the Skin are by that means more open, and if any Accident happens that they be obstructed, by reason of their usual Appetite to Sweat and Perspiration, they are again easily set at Liberty, and the Discharges are made



made in such Plenty, as removes the Indisposition sooner than when there has been little or no Aptitude that way.

But besides that, a continued Use in Dressing always keeps a Horse lively and brisk, and gives him a more perfect and agreeable State of Health: He not only eats and digests his Food well, but feels easy and chearful in himself, which makes him ready and willing to all the Services required of him, as far as his Strength can go. This is plainly manifest to all Persons, as the contrary is no less perceivable with respect to plain, ordinary Horses, which never go through their Business with that Pleasure, either to themselves or their Owners, as those do which have regular Keeping.

The keeping Horses constantly covered, is a The Benefit of keeping Horses covered. no less Benefit in the same respect; besides that, it makes their Coat look smooth, sleek and beautiful. The Impressions of the Air have that Effect upon the Bodies of all Animals, that it shuts up their Pores, by condensing the Juices in the extreme and outward Parts, and by contracting the Fibres, so that there is not sufficient Moisture for the Nourishment of the Hair; for which Cause we may observe the Hair of a Horse, when he is seldom or never cloathed, to stare, and have a burnt Look towards the Points; and tho' some young Horses at Grass will look as smooth as those which are cloathed, yet it must always be in the hottest Weather that the Heat and Moisture is derived towards the Skin in sufficient Plenty; otherwise in cold Weather the finest Horses will look shagged, if they are not cloathed; for, besides the Heat and Warmth that is maintain'd in the external Parts by Cloathing, the Hair is also pressed



pressed down, and made to lie smooth and even, which is the true and natural Position of a Horse's Hair.

Cautions  
concern-  
ing the  
Cloathing  
of Horses.

But even, as in most other Cases, when a Horse has been once habituated to this Way of keeping, it may be of no small Prejudice to him, if the same should at any Time be neglected; and it is no uncommon Thing to observe a Horse catch Cold, and be apt to cough, when by the Carelessness of his Keeper his Cloathing happens to be omitted, though but for one Night; nay we are in this Kingdom so indulgent to our Horses, that for the most part we lay on a Flaxen Sheet, and above that a Woollen Cloath, which is fasten'd with a very broad Surcingle; and those Horses which are design'd for Running, that they may perspire the more, and be the more lightsome, have also their Heads covered with a Hood, which is continued all along their Neck with Buckles and Straps, and fasten'd to the Cloth; so that they are all completely cloathed but their Legs. After their Dressing, we come to consider their Food.

How a  
Horse  
ought to  
be fed  
while at  
Rest.

When a Horse is constantly kept in the Stable, or has but little Exercise, he will continue pretty well in Health, while there is no Alteration in his Way of Living; but there is the same Order and OEconomy observed in his Feeding and Dressing, and that he only goes through his usual Airings, a larger or smaller Quantity of Food; for a more or less Degree of Exercise will become perfectly natural to any Animal Body by Habit and Use: And tho' there may be no due Medium kept in those Things, that is, altho' a Horse may have more Food and less Exercise than his Constitution requires naturally, yet it would be with some Difficulty we could



could abridge him of the one, or increase the other; but when a Horse has been used to a constant Measure of Food, the Body requires constantly the same Quantity to nourish it, because the Capacity of all the Vessels are enlarged to a certain Degree, which requires the same Quantity of Aliment to keep that up; especially as the Proportion of the Excrements, which are cast off by Sweat, Dung, insensible Transpiration, and the other Offices of Secretion, are nearly the same: So that if the Food be suddenly augmented or diminished, it must, by affecting those Secretions, cause some Alteration on the Animal Body, unless there be also some Change in the Exercise; and if the Exercise be changed without an Augmentation or Diminution of Food, it will no less occasion such an Alteration.

But this will be very manifest to those who have made the following, or any other such Experiments. Take any Horse who has stood some Time in the Stable, and been used to half a Peck of Oats a Day as his ordinary Allowance of Corn, and travel him an ordinary Day's Journey for three or four Days successively, without making any Addition to that Allowance; and you will readily find him flag, notwithstanding he had been very well supported by that Quantity while he rested; but perhaps if you continue him in the same Exercise for a Month or longer, with the same Quantity of Food, he will not only recover his Vigor, but his Flesh also; but there are some who cannot be recovered without an Augmentation, and will at least require double the Quantity when they travel, as when they rest; and there are some Horses, who upon an Augmentation  
of



of their Food, will go upon a Journey, or other Exercise, without any Alteration; besides that they may become somewhat stiff in the Joints and Muscles, which is more or less to be expected of all Horses when they are first taken from their Ease and Rest.

The Quantity of a Horse's Food, while he stands in the Stable, not immediately to be determined.

It is not an easy Matter to determine what Quantity of Food a Horse ought to have while he stands constantly in a Stable; I mean, what Quantity or Allowance is sufficient for him, because no Creature whatsoever is ordained for Rest. *Solleysell* is of Opinion, that a Horse ought to be indulged both in his Hay and Corn, but especially in the latter, until he be perfectly fat; after which he observes,, that his Stomach grows very moderate. This is, no doubt, a very good Rule when Horses are previously lean, and require good Feeding, in order to an Augmentation of their Strength; but there are some young Horses, who would be apt to spoil themselves, unless they were kept somewhat sharp; and I cannot but be of the Opinion, that it is by far the safest Extreme to feed Horses that stand much in the Stable with a somewhat frugal Hand, notwithstanding they be lean, it being much safer to augment, if need be, than abate.

Some Horses more greedy of Food when they rest, than when they labour.

We do not find that all Creatures are the more disposed to plentiful Feeding, that they toil and labour; but on the other hand, some are more greedy and voracious, the more they are indulged in Idleness; and this is manifested in divers Instances both in Man and Beast. It is true, as to our part, when we are engaged in Action, our Minds are oftentimes entertained with the Thoughts of Business, or taken up with some other Object, which abate our sensual Desires;



fires; and as we are capable of higher Entertainments, so we think the less of such as are of a low and abject Nature; but it is no less to be doubted, that the nobler Part of the Brute Creatures, as they have their several Affections, so they may also have their Entertainments which amuse them; and tho' they cannot retire within themselves as we do, yet we are sure they are capable of many Enjoyments from outward Objects, and are not a little taken with the Pleasures of their Imagination; which, no doubt, serves many Times to wear off and abate their craving Desire of Food: Besides, Exercise has this Effect upon the Body also, that it keeps the Blood always in a brisk Motion, whereby the Vessels are constantly filled; and this Plenitude, when rightly disposed, abates several Sensations, and among others, that of Hunger.

There is no Condition but that of Pain and <sup>Few Con-</sup> Sick-<sup>ditions</sup>ness, or when a Horse happens to be very <sup>which do</sup> lame, which does not require Exercise; and <sup>not re-</sup> therefore as the most prudent Princes and Com-<sup>quire Ex-</sup>monwealths have always in Times of greatest <sup>ercise.</sup> Peace kept up the same Discipline in their Armies, as in Times of War, and have therefore enjoin'd them their several Marches and Encampments, the better to inure them to Hardships; so those Gentlemen who are Masters of Horses, if they be designed for any Thing besides bare Show and Appearance, ought, no doubt, to order them to be exercised moderately for an Hour or more every Day, or as often as they have Conveniency; for by this Means, they will not only look more vigorous, but be in Readiness upon all Occasions for any Service that shall be required of them; whereas, when it is otherwise, that they are pampered, and have

H their



their constant Station before a full Rack, whenever they are call'd to Service, their Usage must at first be very gentle, or else they will be exposed to divers Accidents, as shall be fully shewn in the following Chapter: But we shall now be somewhat more particular.

TheParti-  
culars of  
Feeding  
Horses at  
Hard  
Meat.

And, First, it ought to be consider'd whether a Horse that stands in the Stable under your Care be fat or lean; if he be newly come off a Journey, or from Grass; or whether he be perfectly well, or has some Indisposition upon him either of Lameness or Sickness. In what relates to the latter, those Things have sufficiently been discussed in our *Farrier's Guide*; but as to the First, if a Horse be lean and low of Flesh, there is certainly all the Reason in the World that he should therefore be the more freely indulged in plentiful Feeding, whatever be the Cause thereof: If it has only proceeded from a previous Want of Food, Ease and full Feeding alone will soon supply that; and if that Leanness proceed from some natural Defect, as in the Make and Configuration, tho' sometimes all the Feeding in the World will never make those Kind of Horses fat, yet we find by Experience that they cannot be supported without a great deal of Food, but are, for the most part, jaded and low in their Spirits, and unfit for any manner of Action.

But if your Horse be already fat, you ought to observe diligently what Quantity of Food, and what Degrees of Exercise are sufficient to keep up the same Order and OEconomy in his Body, and likewise the same Degree of Activity and Spirit; and the Way to know this is, by his Dung, his Staling, and principally when you ride him abroad to give him Exercise.

When



When a Horse is hot and costive, his Dung black, and his Mouth parched and dry, if there has been no visible Accident to occasion those Symptoms, it is then to be suspected his Keeper has been too liberal in Feeding, and too sparing in his Exercise, and very often both. These are among the first Signs of the Disorders that happen in the Way of Feeding and Exercise; but sometimes previous to those, a Horse becomes purgative, which yet cannot be easily discerned, excepting when he is put to some Exercise: And moreover, a Horse which is too plentifully fed, or has not proportionable Exercise, is apt to sweat as soon as he turns warm in Riding, which goes off again by that time he has been exercised for a Mile or two: This may, in some Measure, also be occasioned by Curry-ing and Rubbing; for when the Pores of the Skin are obstructed, and the perspirable Matter retain'd, a greater Quantity must in a full-body'd Horse go off in Sweat, upon being heated more than is natural. The Obstructions of the Urine, that is, when we observe a Horse to labour and strain as often as he goes to Stale, are oftentimes caused by the Hardness of the Excrements, and the Fulness of the Great Gut pressing upon the Neck of the Bladder, with a Plenitude and Fulness of the other Vessels; which not only makes the Pressure the greater, but is oftentimes the Cause why the Urine or Stale is not secreted in sufficient Quantity by the Kidneys themselves; for when there is a Pressure of the Vessels appertaining to the Kidneys, it is certain where there is so great a Promixity, the Vessels of the Kidneys being full and relaxed, press one upon another also.



And therefore, when we observe one, or all those Signs in any Horse that is plump, and in Good-Liking, we may reasonably conclude, that he has either too much Food given him, or else his Exercise is not answerable to it; and the only Way to bring him again into right Order, and prevent Diseases, if you have not Conveniency to give him sufficient Exercise, is in the first place to give him a Mash or two of Malt, or some other open Diet; after that he may have chopt Straw with his Provender. If his Excrements be very hard and adust, it will be proper to rake him, and administer Clysters; for, oftentimes, without such Assistances, there is but little can be done: And after you have comply'd with this Method, it will be proper to have Recourse to the preceding, *viz.* to give him every now and then Mashies, as directed, with chopt Straw among his Provender. Those Things relating to Horses newly come off a Journey, or from Grass, will be considered in their proper Places.

But as to the particular Method of Feeding, most People differ in many Circumstances; some feed but twice a Day, others three Times; and there are some who divide a Horse's Provender into five or six Meals. A Horse may, no doubt, thrive very well under all those different Methods, provided a sufficient Care be taken in other respects; but certainly the most proper Way is, to divide his Allowance into three equal Parts, one for the Morning, another for Noon, and a third for Night; or he may have one Allowance about Eight in the Morning, another about Six or Seven at Night, and that at Noon divided into two; one half to be



be given about Eleven, and the other about Two in the Afternoon.

*Solleysell's* Method was, for the Groom to rise *Solleysell's Method.* early in the Morning, to clean the Manger in the first place, and give the Horse as many Oats as the Crown of a large Hat will hold; after this, to truss up the Litter with a wooden Fork, separating the dry from the wet, laying it up for the Evening, and throwing the rest upon the Dung-hill; and after the Stable has been well cleaned, he orders the Horse to have a small Watering-bit, or *Masticadour* put upon him, whereby being fastned between two Pillars, the Groom is to curry and brush him well; afterwards to dust his Mane and Tail, and to comb them with the Mane-Comb, being first wet with the Sponge, which is for that Purpose. When the Horse has been thus kemp'd and comb'd, and his Skin sleek'd down with a Hair-Cloth, and likewise with a wet Hand, that every Grain of Dust is removed, and his Coat laid smooth and handsome, he is to be again cloathed, and to have a little fresh Hay, well dusted, laid before him. The same Author approves the Method of those, who, as soon as a Horse has eat his Corn, do tie him up to the Rack, provided he be fat; but if it be otherwise, he approves of the contrary Method. He orders him about Ten of the Clock, or a little after, to be led to the River; but in Summer, he says, they may be taken after Eight to the River; but if in Winter, and that there is no River near, his Water ought to have some Wheat-Bran thrown among it; and the Well-water, when given to Horses in Summer, ought to be drawn a considerable Time before they are suffer'd to drink of it, and put into Hogsheads



set on End, that the great Crudity of the Water may be corrected by the Heat of the Sun; but the true Advantage that accrues from hence is, that by standing some Time in the Cask, the stony Corpuscles, and other Mineral Substances, subside and fall to the Bottom, whereby the Water is, no doubt, the more pure and wholesome.

After a Horse is brought from Watering, he orders him to stand to Eleven or Twelve o'Clock at Hay, before he has his second Feeding of Oats, which ought to be larger than the first, near to the Quantity of two *English* Quarts; and if they have been warm'd in any Exercise, he approves the Method of those who give two Measures of wet Bran, and then to turn their Tails to the Manger, if they be managed Horses, letting them champ upon a Slaving-bit till Four in the Afternoon. This, he says, discharges a great deal of superfluous Moisture, which is separated from the *parotid* Glands, and would be prejudicial, if it was not thrown off: But the true Benefit which a Horse receives by this Means, is not the Discharge of that Matter, so much as that he is not only kept thereby in some Abstinence, but that the Slaving-bit excites him to a kind of moderate Exercise; so that it has in every Respect the Effects of a Chewing-Ball, excepting only that in the latter, the Scent and Pungency of the Ingredients contributes to make the Discharge from the Mouth considerably larger, and likewise to influence the Nerves and Animal Spirits.

About Nine at Night, he advises their being well Littered, and a good Part of their Bedding to be cast forwards, which is indeed very necessary, because most Horses toss their Litter out



out behind them. To a Horse which does not work, he orders clean Wheat-Straw for their Night-Diet; but to Coach-Horses, and others, Plenty of Hay, upon the Account of their great Exercise, and their being restrained from Food in the Day-Time. And to preserve them from Accidents, he recommends those who stand together in an open Stable, where there are no Partitions, to be secured with two Bindings, that they may not fight with those that stand next them; and for that Purpose, the Ropes or *Longes* ought to be so long, that they may easily lie down, and the Cross-Bars a little higher than their Hams; with the Ropes at the Ends of them so fastened, that they may easily be slackened, in case they should embarrass themselves.

This was the Order which that experienced Master observed, in feeding Horses that were Plump and Fat; and the Method was certainly, in most respects, very good; for it is certain, a moderate Diet, with a Mixture of those Things that cleanse and scour, is to be preferred to all such Horses. And I am very well assured, from many Instances within my own Knowledge and Observation, that most Horses, while they are kept from Labour, may be maintained, in a perfect Series of Health, with a much smaller Quantity of Hay and Provender, than is usually given them; and many of those Infirmities prevented, which I have observed from a contrary Management. But it is very hard to give any true Notion of those Things, to Persons who are unacquainted with the *Animal OEconomy*, unless they were to make some Trial; for otherwise they will be so much bewedded to Custom, that no Arguments,

Some Observations upon it.



ments, however reasonable, will be able to avail any Thing with them.

I cannot, however, but dissent from that Author in some Things, particularly in giving Horses Straw in the Night; but especially as it seems, from his own Words, more for Convenience than Necessity, that they may not litter their Stalls in the Day-Time. If they were to be fed late in the Afternoon, as most of our Horses are, it would be much more reasonable; when they have most of their Allowance in the Morning, and are kept upon the Slaving-Bit a good Part of the Day afterwards, methinks such a Diet is rather too poor: Besides that as the Night is the proper Time for all Creatures, excepting Beasts of Prey, to rest in, so the Food which they eat about that Time, should be of moderate Nourishment, though light, as that is, no doubt, a great Means of composing the Body to Sleep. But besides, this is yet the more necessary to Horses, because they are of great Activity and Life, and but little disposed to Sleep naturally; for a Horse never sleeps so sound at any Time, but the least Noise in the World would awake him.

The Method of feeding Horses with Oats, before they are rubbed and curried, is also well enough suited to the preceding Method of Feeding; but there may be some Circumstances in ours, which may render it inconvenient. Our Horses are oftentimes very full in a Morning; and some that are more than ordinarily fed, are purgative and unwieldy; wherefore, if they were to have a Feeding of Oats, and to be dressed immediately afterwards, it would be a Means to spoil the Action of their Stomachs.

Rub-



Rubbing and Currying is a pretty good Exercise, but no Exercise can be profitable upon a full Stomach; wherefore the better Way, if a Horse be moderately full with Hay, is to tie him up, and rub him well for an Hour or Two, before you give him any Oats. And it is, no doubt, the best Way also, after eating of Hay, to lead him, or ride him to Water; for Hay has always that manifest Effect, to make a Horse dry; and when his Drowth is quenched, he must not only eat his Oats with a better Gust, but they will also do him the more Good.

It is a common Practice in this Kingdom, <sup>The Gal-</sup> and what *Solleysell* greatly complains of, to <sup>loping</sup> gallop Hunters, and Running Horses, as soon <sup>Horses af-</sup> as they come out of the Water, for the Space <sup>ter their</sup> of a Quarter of an Hour: And indeed, as that <sup>Water,</sup> Author observes, there are but few who will <sup>may be</sup> hear any Thing said against this Method. The <sup>very pre-</sup> eating so much Hay as is customary in this <sup>judicial,</sup> Kingdom, no doubt makes our Horses drink a great Quantity of Water at once; for that Reason it may be necessary to give them moderate Exercise immediately after it, to prevent it from chilling them too much: Because every one must be sensible how far large Draughts of any cold Liquor, which has no Spirit, may endanger the Animal Body: But that Method of Galloping full Speed, is not always advisable; and I cannot but be of *Solleysell's* Opinion, that it may oftentimes be the Means of turning Horses Purfive; and may, no doubt, be injurious to their Wind notwithstanding. When a Horse happens to be hurt that Way, it will probably be ascribed to some other Cause; and therefore, if I was to gallop a Horse



a Horse coming out of the Water, I should certainly continue him no longer in such Exercise, than I found him grow warm. There is, no doubt, a great deal in Use, but it ought to be considered, that the Blood is brought into a violent Hurry, whenever a Horse is put beyond a Hand-Gallop; and all the Blood-Vessels in the Lungs are extreemly filled by the *Pulmonary* Artery, which proceeds immediately from the Heart, the Fountain of Blood; And it is owing to this Plenitude of the Vessels in the Lungs, that all Creatures have such Difficulty in breathing upon any violent Motion, because then the Air is denied its free Egress and Ingress into the little *Vessicules*, or Bladders, wherein the extreme Branches of the Wind-pipe terminate. But when there is, besides this Plenitude in the Vessels of the Lungs, a Fulness also of the Stomach, the Action of Breathing must be yet more obstructed, by its Pressure forwards upon the *Midriff*, and especially considering the Position of Horses Bodies, which makes Exercise upon a full Stomach more prejudicial to them, than to us who are of erect Posture.

The particular Inconveniences thereof.

But if a Horse be Lusty and Fat, the Inconvenience of violent Exercise after Water will be yet the greater, because the Pressure upon the Lungs must of Consequence be the more heavy; whereby many Obstructions may be caused in those Parts of the *Lungs*, *Plura*, or *Midriff*, where the Vessels are the smallest, and either be the Cause of Chest-foundring, or may gradually, by inducing first of all Purpiveness, at length affect a Horse in his Wind, so as to render him incurable. For these Reasons, a Horse ought to be gently used upon a full Stomach,



mach, even of Hay and Water, unless he has been constantly hardened to Exercise, and that you are sure his Body is perfectly clean. But this is yet the more reasonable, because the same End may be better obtain'd by moderate Exercise: And I must therefore greatly commend the Practice of those Persons, who when they ride their Horses to Water, suffer them not to drink their Stomach full at first, but ride them gently up and down for some Time, before they finish their Draught. This I take to be the best Method of giving a Horse his Water, either Summer or Winter; but in those Places which are at a great Distance from any River, or good Pond, and that People are obliged to water their Horses in the Stable, the best Way, in such a Case, is to fill a Pail with Water, and set it for some Time before the Fire, strewing it with Bran, or Oatmeal; but a Horse who is hardy, may have it as it comes from the Well. After the Water, it can never be amiss, if the Weather be favourable, to ride him out into the Air, at least once a Day, especially after he has drank; and if his Water be divided into two equal Portions, it can never be improper to renew his Exercise after the last Draught, as well as after the first; for by this Means a Horse cannot be readily hurt, either by the Quantity or Coldness of the Water: Whereas, when a Horse is very hot and thirsty, after a great Abundance of Hay, as is very common, he may easily be injured by the great Quantity of cold Water which he is apt to drink, while in that Condition, unless there be a reasonable Care taken to prevent those Inconveniencies.



A proper  
Method of  
Feeding,  
and pre-  
vents most  
Accidents.

If a proper Method was observed in the Food and Exercise of Horses, there would be few Accidents happen at any Time to them: The first Infirmities of a bad Constitution might be often changed into a better Habit, and many of those ascribed to the *Sire* or *Dam*, though for the most part owing to ill Management, might undoubtedly be prevented: No Animal Body is so much diseased from the Womb, as many are apt to imagine; but when Infirmities shew themselves early, and in the younger Days of any Creature, they are commonly owing to some Accidents, either in the Air, or other outward Injury, or to their Feeding and Exercise, as well as those which happen in their more advanced Age: As to the Air, it may, indeed, hurt the Constitution by Necessity; nor is it impossible but many Creatures may have the Seeds of an ill Constitution from their Dams: And there are many unforeseen outward Accidents, that cannot be prevented; but most of all, the Accidents and Infirmities that happen to the Bodies of Animals, are owing to the Excess or Want of Food, and to the Excess or Want of Exercise, to the administering Food, (under which we include also Drink) at improper Times; *viz.* cramming them when they are already too full, or letting them drink when they are hot, and are inclinable to drink too much; suffering them to eat too plentifully, after they have fasted long; abridging them of their Food, after they have labour'd and work'd hard: To which we may also add a Carelessness in dressing those Horses that have been constantly used to it, as that, besides other Advantages, makes up Part of their Exercise.

Now



Now Accidents may easily happen to Horses, from the Want of OEconomy in all those Respects, and yet we may be insensible how they came; for it is not easy to judge of those Things, where the Effect does not immediately follow the Cause. When a Horse is poisoned, we may soon know it, because the Effect will, for the most part, be sudden; we shall observe his Eyes look red and swoln; he will heave exceedingly from his *Chine*, and labours for Breath; he will be apt also to run at the Nose, and foam at the Mouth, and sometimes be *Phrenzical* and *Delirious*; and we are no less sensible of all the common Symptoms that attend Fevers, and other acute Diseases; and we easily perceive the immediate Effects that follow outward Accidents, as Lameness, Wounds, and Loss of Blood; but the Consequences of an ill-ordered Diet, or a bad *Regimen*, with respect to Exercise, are not always to be discovered, but after some Time, because they are for the most part gradual.

When a Horse happens to be gorged with over-much Food, and is kept without Exercise, he oftentimes becomes full of Humours; the Blood-Vessels are cramm'd, and the Blood has not sufficient Room to circulate. In some Contextures of Body, this produces no immediate Effects, but those already mention'd, *viz.* Purfiveness, a Disposition to sweat upon the least Exercise; the Horse soon flags, and is unable to go through any Degree of Exercise; but as a Relaxation of the Vessels proceeds from hence, it causes the Juices also to be viscid; so that upon the least Irregularity, they are apt to stagnate in those Parts where the Vessels and Fibres are the smallest; where many Horses, who,



to outward Appearance, look well, are nevertheless inwardly diseased, and may have Obstructions in their *Lungs, Livor, Kidneys*, or some other of the principal Bowels, which may continue a long Time before they make any visible Alteration; and sometimes by a Change of Living, such Accidents again wear off. These are the Circumstances which oftentimes deceive us; and it is from an ill Management in the ordering of a Horse's Diet, that many of those, which, like *Bullocks*, are only fatted by the Jockies for Sale, prove errant Jades. Most of their Food is soften'd by Boiling or Scalding, that it may turn the sooner to Nourishment. All the Methods in the World are taken to provoke them to Thirst often, that they may drink plentifully, and swell their Vessels; neither are they permitted to have any Exercise to hinder their growing fat; but as this is no other than a false Growth and Nourishment, they are no sooner changed to a more solid Food, affording more true Nourishment, tho' it administers less to the Growth of their Bodies, but they commonly turn indisposed; and the first Service they are put to, melts down their Bodies to such a Degree, that they are presently lean and jaded. Many of those Horses are in their Nature very good too, and after they come into the Hands of those Persons who administer nothing to them but proper Food, tho' they do not look so well to outward Appearance, as when they were in the Jockies Hands, yet they are of more lasting Vigor and Service.

Most Persons are ambitious to have their Horses look fat and plump, that they may have a good Appearance to the Eye; but as the main End of those Creatures is for Service, such Methods



thods should, no doubt, be taken, as are proper to fit and adapt them thereunto. Some are of Opinion, that a Horse can never be too fat, but I must confess myself to be altogether of another Mind; for, besides the Inconveniency of too much Fat in Creatures of Service and Fatigue, they are sometimes so much loaded, as even to render them the less beautiful; and this is sufficiently manifested in many Geldings which I have seen monstrously thick of Flesh, insomuch that none of the true Lineaments have appeared, but the whole Body has looked like a Thing that is stuffed, and without Life; and the Action of such Horses can never appear with that Freedom, as when there is only a Mediocrity.

But I shall conclude what I have further to say on this Head, by making some Observations whereby we must certainly know when a Horse that is kept constantly in the Stable thrives, and when he does not.

If we make an exact Scrutiny into this Matter, we shall find that we are not altogether to look to the outward Appearance of a Horse, whether he be charged with Fat, or whether his Coat lies smoothly; for we are very sensible that full Feeding, good Rubbing and Dressing, with the keeping a Horse constantly well cloathed and littered, will produce all those Effects: And this is plainly manifest from the Jockies Management; neither are we altogether to regard that Flush of Spirit which appears upon a Horse's first coming out of a Stable, and is the Effects of meer Pampering and full Feeding; for a Horse that has Blood, can hardly be without Vigor, tho' if he has not been carefully fed and inured to Exercise, it will soon abate; the small-

How to  
know  
when a  
Horse  
thrives.



smallest Vessels in all Parts will become full while he is in Exercise; and those in the Brain will be so much loaded, that we may observe him in a little Time begin to reel, and his Legs will sometimes tremble under him; which the Horse-Courfers never fail to ascribe to an Over-Eagerness in him, or some other Cause, which they are sure will be no ways interpreted to his Disadvantage. And because they are sensible that their Horses are not able to continue any Time in Exercise, their Method is to set Riders upon them who will work them to the Height of their Mettle for three or four Turns the Length of a Street, and presently set them up again to Rest; for if they were to do otherwise, their Horses would be exposed to many Accidents, from the Fulness and Rankness of Blood; and if they did not fall down in a Fitt of the Staggers, they would soon lose all their Spirits, and look very dead-hearted; whereas those which have been inured to moderate Exercise, and a proper Diet, never fail to hold out; they may, indeed, not shew so great a Forwardness in their Action as the other, but they will continue more steady in it. If they are not altogether so fat, they will look more nervous, and their Flesh hard and firm; their Breathing will be easy, and without Constraint, and there will be no great Disposition to Sweat. A Horse in the Jockey's keeping, also dungs frequently, not only from the Plenty of moist Food which is given him, but likewise from the Relaxation of Body, whereby all the Vessels lose their natural Tone; and even the Guts themselves are not able to retain their Contents, when put to Exercise: But a Horse who is kept as he ought to be, is not so ready in those Discharges, because his whole Body is  
firm.



firm, and all the Secretions more regularly performed.

And therefore, the only Way to be sure in those Particulars, is, to have a constant and daily Observation of his Dung, Urine, and likewise the whole Texture and Configuration of his Body: In what relates to his whole Body, his Muscles should be clean, and somewhat distinct, if he be a Stone-Horse; but in Geldings, the Spaces and Interstices between them are more apt to be filled with Fat; but yet those Geldings are commonly the best ordered, who most resemble Stone-Horses, and have some Spaces between their Muscles. This may, indeed, be caused by gelding a Horse after he is come to his full Maturity; but one who has always had sufficient Exercise, will have the same good Lineaments, because a constant Action of the Muscles contributes greatly to throw off a deal of that Matter which fills up the Spaces between them, and the Tone of all the Fibres is thereby preserved; so that a Horse is not only able to go thro' Fatigue, but to continue in it.

If you examine him in Parts, his Legs are also clean and nervous, and free from all manner of Goutiness and Swellings of any Kind. When a Horse's Legs swell upon standing in the Stable, it is a plain Sign of some ill Habit of Body, and always denotes the Want of Exercise; the Vessels are relaxed, and are only to be hardened and recovered to their due Tone and Spring thereby. I know in this last respect, Exercise will not always avail; but this happens only when it has been too long delayed, or when it has only been very sparing. An Airing or Walking abroad, according to the  
I usual



usual Manner, is not always sufficient to remove that Gourdiness, especially which happens in the Legs of young Horses; but they ought to have it effectual, be rid every Day for a considerable Time together, and if they be of such Kind of Horses as are fit for Draught, there is nothing can be of greater Service to them than going in the Plow, because that Disposition to Gourdiness oftentimes proceeds from the Softness and Delicacy of the whole Body, which is hardened and fortify'd by Exercise; and this is yet the most necessary in Winter, because then the Sharpness of the Air makes Impressions on the Legs and Pasterns, where the Vessels are the smallest, and by obstructing the Passages of Perspiration, causes the Swelling and Gourdiness; but this happens only where there is a previous Delicacy and Relaxation in those Parts: And when the Swelling is of long Continuance, there is scarcely any Exercise, or any other Method will relieve any such Horse, except running altogether abroad, because then many of the Vessels are quite obstructed, and the Texture of the Part is altogether changed and altered from what it is in a natural State. But this shall be discoursed of more largely when we come to lay down the Causes of Turning Horses to Grass.

Action the  
most cer-  
tain Way  
whereby  
to judge of  
a Horse's  
Condi-  
tion.

But the most certain Way of knowing the true State and Condition of a Horse's Health, is when you bring him to Action. A Horse that has been suddenly fatted by Ease and Pampering, will, no doubt, when he is first brought out of the Stable, move with as much Briskness, and with the Appearance of as much true Mettle as any other; but after a little Time, he will begin to flag, and if you put him



him into any Exercise that is a little violent, he will tremble and stagger, as has been already observed of the Jockeys Horses; and if you look into his Eyes, you may perceive them troubled, and full of Red or Yellow Strokes. The Eye is a weak delicate Part, and therefore is easily affected in all lax Habits of Body, and is one of the surest Marks in the World to know the Temper and Disposition of the Body. All Animals that are of a weak and delicate Constitution, will no less shew the same Prognosticks in their Eyes, when they are kept too much in the Want of Food; and this needs no other Explanation, but only that there is not a sufficient Stock of Spirits to maintain the Circulation in the extreme and outward Parts; so that the Blood which is thrown into the Eyes by the Exercise, is not sufficiently forwarded, but is dammed up in those small Vessels, until the Horse is brought to Rest, that it moves gradually.

If a Horse sweats when he is first brought into Action, it is also a Sign that he is not in perfect good Order: But this is most manifest in Horses newly taken up from Grass. However, all Horses that are not used to Exercise, are no less subject to this Infirmary; and until they are harden'd by constant and daily Labour of some kind or another, they are not fit for Service. The best Way, when a Man observes his Horse to sweat, is, undoubtedly, to have him rid every Day; but he should be rid very gently at first, otherwise all those Accidents will happen to him which are customary to Men that are unhabituated to travel. These will perform a short Journey with as much Alacrity as any;



but when they are obliged to continue any Time in that Exercise, it is followed with many Complaints; particularly Soreness and Inability for some Time thereafter, with Heat and Feverishness; but if this happens in hot Weather, and the Body is in any previous Disorder, even of Plénitude, it greatly endangers their falling into putrid or malignant Fevers; whereas those that are accustomed to travel, are no ways subject to such Inconveniencies: And, no doubt, it is the same with all other Animals; as their Bodies are, in many respects, of the like Texture of Vessels, and composed of the same common Matter as ours.

But there is one Thing ought very much to be regarded with respect to Horses, and that is, their great Weight; and this also deserves a particular Consideration with respect to the Horses of different Sizes, and likewise with respect to their different Make; there being some more adapted by Nature to particular Exercises than others; and therefore a Horse that is of large Bulk, strong, and clumsy, ought chiefly to be put to Labour; but those for the Saddle ought to be the more gently used, the more weighty and heavy they are. But all Horses, in changing from Ease and Rest to Exercise, ought to have their Exercise gradual, that is, they should by no means be continued long in Exercise at first; but every Week they may be exercised more than another, and may also be more urged as they become harden'd by Use and Habit, even until they quite leave off Sweating; for, if they be inwardly sound, are no way hectic or consumptive, but only foggy, they will easily be broke of that Habit of Sweating by due



due Care in their Feeding, and by accustoming them by Degrees to Exercise.

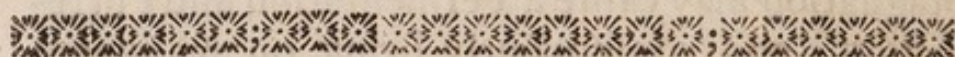
The same gradual Method ought no less to be observed in all Cases where there are the previous Signs of Sickneſs, eſpecially when a Horſe does not void his Dung freely, or when he has ſome Difficulty in ſtaling; for by Exercise, all thoſe Viſcidities either in the Blood and other Juices, or in the firſt Paſſages, are ſo much broke and overcome, that many Times it prevents approaching Sickneſs; but if when thoſe Symptoms appear, you give your Horſe too violent Exercise, it may cauſe very bad Accidents, and haſten on ſome Diſtemper which was only threatned, and may alſo be accompanied with abundance of Aggravations, which otherwiſe might not have happen'd; for by the Hurry of Exercise, while a Horſe is in that Condition, a great deal of the Viſcidities of the Blood and Juices may be propell'd, and thruſt forward into the ſmalleſt Veſſels, where its Stagnation may cauſe a Fermentation and Putrefaction, and conſequently bring on malignant Diſorders, eſpecially when there happens to be any previous Indispoſition in the Air.

But if a Horſe thrives, and does well while kept at hard Meat, none of all thoſe Symptoms will appear; he will both eat heartily, and drink moderately; his Eyes will look brisk and lively; he will neither be too much loaded with Fleſh, nor will he be lean, but firm and nervous; and if he be but indifferently dreſſed, his Coat will look ſmooth, and his Colour look agreeably ſhaded. The Effects of Exercise and Reſt will not be ſo very perceivable in him, as in a tender or diſeaſed Horſe; that is, he will go through Exercise, or ſtand in the Stable,

The Signs  
taken  
from the  
State of  
Body.



without any great Alteration, unless the Exercise be too violent; or, on the other hand, that he be continued too long in Ease and full Feeding: His Dung will be well digested, without a Mixture of the large Stalks of Hay, or whole Grains of Corn; for whenever those are very perceivable in the Dung, it is a manifest Sign of a bad Digestion. A Horse in good Order will also stale freely, and oftentimes draw his Yard; and he will be brisk and ready to every Action; he will be durable, and upon Occasion, go through a great deal of Fatigue with little Food; for when once the Body of a Horse is brought into good Order, it is easily supported, because there is a much better OEconomy in the Circulation of all the Juices; and as they are not so apt to be obstructed, so the Nourishment is dispensed more equally into all the Parts, and the Body in this Condition is not so apt to suffer either from a sickly Air, or from any of those Things term'd *Non-Naturals*.



## C H A P. VIII.

### *The Order of Dieting Horses when they Travel.*

**A**S all Horses are not fit for Journey-Riding, so their Management ought upon a Journey to be different, according to their different Kinds. Some of the *Scots* Horses, and many of our best ambling Nags, are well coupled, and for the most part, durable upon a Journey; but most of these are unfit to be put beyond their



their usual Pace. Others again will go thro' <sup>Some Things which ought to be considered previous to a Journey.</sup> the Fatigue of Galloping, and perform that Kind of Exercise Day after Day, provided the Rider does not continue them too long without Intervals of walking, or does not make his Day's Journey too long. There is another Kind of Horses, who will almost last for ever without Decay, or Loss of Flesh: But many of these are so miserably dull and sluggish, that they can hardly be made to go faster than some Men are able to walk. But there are yet some Horses ready and willing enough to all the Rider requires of them; but by reason of their Make and Size, are not able to go thro' a Journey, unless they be used with the greatest Gentleness: And of this Kind are all the heavy *Flanders* Breed, and many of our Draught-Horses.

Now it is very plain, that a Man ought to <sup>With respect to the Difference of</sup> consider well the Nature of his Horse, his Strength, his Constitution, what Weight he is able to bear, and how he has been kept, before he takes his Journey, otherwise he may be exposed to Accidents upon the Road, which will not be very pleasant to him. Every one knows that many of our Ambling Nags, and Journey Pads, will endure much Fatigue in travelling; and as they are for the most part of a very strong Make, will carry a larger Weight in proportion to their Size than any other, but few of them are fit for hard Riding or Galloping. Some are indeed of great Speed, but their Stretch in Galloping not being wide like that of a Hunter, that kind of Exercise must therefore be very fatiguing to them, because if we reckon upon every Stretch such Horses make in Galloping, their Action is almost double, when



compared with that of a light Horse, or Horse of Pleasure, and of Consequence their Labour must also be proportional; for which Reason they ought to be kept in one uniform Action, without forcing them to do more than is agreeable to their Nature; and by this Means no Horses in the World will do greater Service upon a Journey, tho' they are not always easy to the Rider.

When a Man travels upon such a Horse as we commonly use for Hunting, he needs not be under so great a Restraint; for Hunting Horses may be sometimes Gallop'd, and not be so much hurt thereby, as others upon a full Trot. The Gallop and Canter is natural to some Horses; and it is scarcely to be imagin'd how long they will continue in it, without Prejudice; the particular Make of their Body, no doubt, contributes a great deal to this. Use is also a great Promoter of a Horse's Ability, in continuing in hard Exercise, as is plainly manifest in some Post-Horses, which run over their Stages for many Years together without any great Change or Alteration; but in a continued Journey there is no doubt a great deal owing to the Rider; for Post-Horses, if they meet with a heavy unactive Rider at any Time, they have their Relief at the end of their Stage, perhaps with a little Galling, or the Loss of some Hair; but upon a Journey, unless a Man sits easy, and does all the other Offices of a good Horseman, the best Horse in the World will soon suffer under him.

But there is one sort which are between the Heavy, and Light Nimble Breed, descended of our Coach Breed on the one Side, and of a more generous Blood on the other, but in their Shape  
and



and Bulk retain more of the First than of the Latter. Of this Kind there are a few very extraordinary Horses for travelling, tho' many of them are only fit for Draught, but when they happen to prove right, there are no Horses in the World go so easy nor so swift a Trot, and they are for the most part also strong and durable, and fit to carry any reasonable Weight. I believe there are few Persons who have been much conversant this way, who have not known some of these who were able to trot Ten measured Miles in an Hour, and the Rider sits as easy all the while as if he was carry'd in a Chair. It is an Observation which will seldom fail, that the Actions which are perform'd with Easiness by any Creature, are seldom or never prejudicial, unless they be either continued too long, or that a sufficient Quantity of Sustenance is with-held.

Our strong Coach-breed are not often made use of as Journey Horses, excepting upon some extraordinary Occasions, and when they are regimented, that they are obliged to Marches. But yet there are ever, among those, some who will perform a Journey wonderfully well. They are apt to labour very hard when they are put a full Trot, by reason of their large Size and great Weight, but especially when their Riders are also heavy; they ought therefore to be rid very gently, and but short Journeys, otherwise they may be easily founder'd, and as easily furbated; the one causing oftentimes an incurable Lameness, and the others affecting their Wind.

Horses that have gone thro' their Exercises in the Manage, ought also to be used with the greatest Care imaginable while upon the Road, especially if the Way be Hard and Stony, or  
Deep.



Deep. They are by no means fit to go after the Rate of Journey Riding, but ought to be for the most part Led or Rid by a very expert Horseman; for in the Manage they are taught to lift their Feet high, and strike them upon the Ground with great Firmness, which, if it be Stoney, or full of Gravel, easily renders them furbated; an Accident which happens to abundance of managed Horses, when they fall into bad Hands, or when they are forced to go long Journeys.

These Things premised, we shall, in the next place, lay down the particular Rules to be observed by all Persons, not only before they undertake a Journey, but how their Horses are to be managed while they are upon the Road, according to their several Kinds, and the Circumstances most usual in travelling, as also what Care ought to be had at the End of their Journey.

The Saddle, how it should be ordered.

The first Thing to be consider'd after the Choice of a Horse, is to fit him exactly with Saddle, Bridle, and other Accoutrements, and to see that he be rightly shod: And in the next place, to examine into his past Method of feeding, and to manage his Diet and Exercise accordingly, that he may be fit to go thro' all that is propos'd for him to do. Those Things are very material, and ought to be enquired into before any Man takes a Journey; for if Saddle and other Accoutrements be bad or unfit, they will soon spoil a Horse's Back; and if that is not taken care of in due time, it exposes him to *Navelgals*, *Sitfasts*, and other Accidents, which as they are placed among the *Spines* of the Back, oftentimes degenerate and turn to *Fistula's*, and other incurable Ulcers; besides



besides the great Hindrance and Inconveniency they are of in the mean time to the Rider.

As to the Saddle, there needs be no very particular Directions laid down in a Country where there is perhaps the most expert Saddle-Carpenters and Saddlers in the World. Our Hunting-Saddles are originally our own, and the best for travelling, and for many other Uses, after People have once been accustomed to them. They are, for the most part, very light, and lie close to the Horse's Back, and for that Reason are neither so apt to cause a Horse to sweat, or to be galled; but for those who have not been used to those Kind of Saddles, there is in *London*, and other great Cities, the best Models that are to be met with any where, not only for Journey-Riding, but for managed Horses.

A Saddle which any one is to make use of for a Journey, or other Service, ought to be as exactly fitted to a Horse's Back as a Shooe to a Man's Foot; it should not be too wide, otherwise the least Motion will press it more upon one Part than another, whereby it will be apt to fret a Horse's Back, especially if he be tender and thin skin'd; and if it be too strait, it will press so hard on all Sides, that it cannot fail of making a Horse go crippling and lame. A well made Saddle should be somewhat raised before and behind; but when it happens to be considerably high on those Parts, unless for a Horse that is lean or low-back'd, it will cause not only Uneasiness to the Rider, but also to the Horse himself; for those Saddles are apt to sit too close upon the Spine, and make a Pressure there, which would soon fret the Skin.

As



As to the Breadth of the Back, and Declivity or Fall of the Sides, that is commonly order'd according to the Size of the Horse, and sometimes to the Rider's Fancy. Some People love to have a broad Seat; but a Saddle, broad under the Pommel, is always very uneasy and tiresome; and if it does not lie close to the Horse's Sides by a somewhat steep Declivity, the Rider can never have that Command of a Horse he ought to have; but his Thighs and Legs will be carry'd at too great a Distance, which is very inconvenient and troublesome.

After the Shape of the whole Saddle, the next Thing to be consider'd is the Stuffing, which is also of no small Importance. A bad Saddle will sometimes do Service when it is well stuffed; but when it is otherwise that a Saddle happens to want Stuffing, or is not rightly stuffed in the Pannels especially, it will be apt to hurt a Horse, let it be never so well framed. The Combings, or small Hair of a Horse's Mane or Tail, is the fittest to stuff Saddles, or the Hair which grows at the End of Bullocks Tails; but the other Hair of Cattle, tho' it be often made use of to stuff Saddles, because most plentiful, yet it is apt to be lumpy and uneven, and never lies smooth until a Saddle has been used, and several times stuffed with it.

A new Saddle should be carefully look'd to, until it has had its true Seat, otherwise it will be apt to gall and fret a Horse's Back; and therefore, when a Person first sets out upon his Journey with such an one, he ought to alight, and look under the Saddle pretty often, until it is perfectly proved, and have the Pannels new stuffed where-ever it pinches. And sometimes  
where



where the Horse happens to be tender and thin skin'd, it cannot be amiss to lay a double Cloth under the Saddle, unless in very hot Weather, for then it may occasion the Horse to sweat too much; but if there be a Fault in the Make of the Saddle, it will be very troublesome; and a Man had better throw away a bad Saddle, than spoil a good Horse.

The Girt ought to be moderately broad, and placed somewhat forwards; for when it is not so, it is apt to turn too slack, or upon a light-belly'd Horse, to fall backwards, and hinder the Freedom of his Action; and sometimes oppresses a Horse in his Wind, which is very troublesome upon a Journey; and when too narrow, it is apt to cut and fret the Hair. All the other Accoutrements belonging to a Saddle, as Stirrups, and Stirrup-leathers, Crowper and Breast-plate, if those be used, ought also to be firm and fresh; but no Gentleman will ever expose himself with rotten Furniture. The Crowper should be soft and easy, especially that Part of it which comes under the Tail, and buckled to a just Length, that it may neither hang to be useless, nor straiten the Horse, by drawing back his Rump; for sometimes we see them galled and fretted there, for want of a little Care. The same is also to be observed with respect to the Breast-plate; for I have seen Horses sometimes galled and fretted, by buckling their Breast-plates too tight; besides that it greatly hinders and interrupts their Action, and makes them creep as if they were lame of their Feet or Shoulders; and it is also troublesome when it hangs too low; besides that it looks very ugly.

The Bridle ought next to be consider'd, and whether a Bit or a Snaffle, the Headstall thereof should

The  
Bridle  
and other  
Accoutre-  
ments.



should be fitted to the Horse's Head ; for when the Headstall is too long, it causes the Bit to hang too low , which is very unsightly , and every Time the Rider pulls the Reins, it is apt to grate his Mouth and hurt it ; and when the Headstall is too short, the Bit will injure the Weeks of his Mouth, and cause Ulceration, which is very common to those Horses who are under the Care of indifferent Horsemen. When the Head is too narrow on the Upper Part, it draws a Horse's Ears too close together, which is troublesome to some Horses ; but this Method is commonly used by the Jockies to Leaf-ear'd Horses, to cause them to carry their Ears upright. If a Horse be to go a Journey in a great Bit with Branches, it is certainly the best Way to have it, and all the other Iron-work, as light as possible ; it should not be much above twice the Weight of a Snaffle, and in Length exactly fitted to the Horse's Mouth, that it may give him no Uneasiness ; for if it be otherwise, that the Bit is too heavy, it will many Times upon a Journey cause him to hang too heavy upon the Hand, especially when he is faint and tired, and may thereby induce a very bad Habit ; and if the Bit be too long or too short, it will injure the Horse's Mouth, and cut his Weeks to such a Degree, that he will never do the least chearful Service upon the Road, but be continually upon the Fret.

Most of our Country-Gentlemen use no other Bridles but Snaffles, which are certainly the lightest, and the fittest for the Road, excepting for those who study an Appearance ; and then, unless all Things be suitable, and of a Piece, both the Horse and his Rider looks very oddly. Holsters, Housings, and the other Appurtenances  
belong-



belonging to a compleat Furniture, are very apt to make a Horse too warm in hot Weather; and for that Reason there are many who only use a light Saddle made after the Manner of a Hunting Saddle, with the Housings of a very thin Cloath lined with Canvass, which is not only genteel, but also convenient.

When the Saddle and all its Furniture are prepared and fitted, the Condition of the Horse ought to be examined into, whether he be one that is clean and active, or foggy; and whether he has been used to Exercise, or to stand much in the Stable, &c.

A Horse that has been used to Exercise needs little or no Preparation, but to rest and feed well for a few Days; but one that has stood much in the Stable at full Feeding, should have moderate Exercise given him every Day, until his Body is hardened, and his Joints suppled, otherwise he will be apt to flag in the Beginning of his Journey; for when a Horse has been used to stand without Exercise, tho' he may look fat and plump, and be also in good Heart, that is, vigorous and brisk, yet the Juices are apt to be viscid and unactive; so that a too sudden or long-continued Action, as it increases the Motion of the Blood, which in that State is unfit to be moved too much; so it must unavoidably cause a Stagnation in all those Parts where the Vessels are the smallest, viz. the Joints and Sinews, and likewise in the Membranes of the Muscles. And the Reason is the same why we find some Men often complain of Soreness and Stiffness after unaccustomed Exercise, and why the Flesh is, as it were, bruised, and sometimes inflamed, and why there are oftentimes aching Pains in the Joints: For when an

Horses which have stood in the Stable, ought to be prepared for their Journey.

over-



over-great Quantity of viscid Blood is thrown into those small Vessels, it cannot easily move forwards, much less return backwards; so that it stretches and relaxes those Parts beyond Measure, and by that Means causes Pain and Anguish; wherefore in all such Cases it is very necessary, before a Man undertakes a Journey, to prepare his Horse by moderate Exercise, or at least to begin with small Stages, and then to ride but moderately, otherwise it will be apt to cause Rheumatick Disorders; which because they occasion a Horse to halt exceedingly, our ordinary Grooms and Farriers are often deceived, and believe Horses in this Condition to be strained in their Shoulders; and I have known such Persons charge one Shoulder, when the Lameness has been equally in both.

It is not unfrequent also, when they see a Horse under these Circumstances gather his Legs together, that they believe his Back to be sway'd; and for that Reason they apply the Blood-Charge, or some other such Remedy, to the Reins. But there is nothing so proper to relieve those Disorders as good Rubbing, and a Continuation in Exercise; tho' it is, no doubt, very proper to rest at first for two or three Days, when you perceive the Horse to be very stiff and lame, after which begin again to ride him afresh.

The Method to be used when a Horse happens to be stiff after riding.

This is the only rational Method that can be taken, when such Accidents happen upon the Beginning of a Journey, and the properest Means to harden any Horse so as to enable him to go thro' his Work. Hard Rubbing may indeed injure a Horse in this Condition, as all Violence is prejudicial to Parts that are already hurt and bruised; but moderate and frequent Rubbing



Rubbing with a Brush, and a Woollen or Hair Cloth, moves the stagnated Juices by the Heat and Action it communicates to the Parts, whereby the obstructed Juices become more rarify'd and thin, and consequently are the more readily set at Liberty.

But when to this is also join'd bodily Exercise, and when that is given seasonably, it not only relieves such Accidents, but also rectifies the whole Constitution of the Blood and Juices; for when any Creature is used to constant and daily Exercise, and is at the same time otherwise sound, all the Liquids of the whole Body become thin and Fluid; and as they are not apt to Stagnation, so the Parts are never distended, but grow firm and solid, and are render'd able to bear the Sallies of their proper Juices. And this is also the Reason, why all Creatures, when once they are used to Fatigue, will, with their common Allowance of Food, go thro' a great deal of Labour without much Toil; whereas others oftentimes sink under Exercise which is but moderate: And therefore a Horse that is foggy, or has stood much in a Stable, when brought to travel, should be used gently at first, by riding him but short Stages, or exercising him daily before he sets off; and giving him now and then a Day's Rest at first, until you perceive his Labour grow easy and familiar to him.

The Season of the Year is also very much to be regarded in Travelling, not only with respect to the Air, but also to the Roads. Exercise in hot Weather ought to be very moderate; and the properest Way is to set out betimes in the Morning, that you may accomplish the best Half of your Day's Journey, before the exces-

The Season of the Year to be regarded in travelling.



five Heat, which is the proper Time both for Man and Beast to refresh themselves in some cool Place; for the scorching Sun may expose both the Horse and Rider, either to malignant or simple inflammatory Fevers, according to their previous State of Body. Tho' sometimes, when the Constitution is season'd to it, and there is a very great Aptitude and Propensity to sweat, both Men and Horses will bear it very well, especially when they are supported by proper Food. But as it is easier to prevent Accidents, than cure them when once they happen, the best Way is to be on the safe Side, especially when there is no Necessity of doing otherwise.

A Horse should be carefully rubb'd at all Times when he is set up, but especially in hot Weather, when all the Pores are open. And here it is necessary to observe, that when a Horse is set up in the Heat of the Day, he ought not to be put into a Stable where there is too much Air, until he be perfectly cool; and for that Reason, I cannot but approve the Method of those who remove their Horses, after an Hour's standing in one Stable, into another that is cooler; for altho' a cool Air be, no doubt, very grateful to all Creatures when they are hot, yet the Consequence is oftentimes bad; and not without good Reason, as it causes an Adstriction of all the Pores, and thereby stops Perspiration; by which means a Horse, when he is brought out, and put afresh upon Exercise, turns purfy for want of those Discharges that are necessary from all the external Parts, and so renders him liable to be Chest-founder'd in his Body, with all the other Accidents subsequent thereunto.

The



The longer any one rests in the Heat of the Day, it is certainly the better; and unless a Man's Affairs be very urgent, it must be a great Advantage both to himself and his Horse, to put up from Ten in the Morning to Three or Four in the Afternoon: For altho' in Cities, where the Buildings are close, and in some dry Valleys that are much inclosed, the Heat of the Afternoon is the most excessive, by reason of the Sun's longer Continuance in the *Horizon*; yet the Evening Breezes, for the most part, begin to rise in the more open Fields, and nothing is more grateful both to Man and Beast. The Air is always the most refreshing on hilly Grounds, and such as have little or no Depth of Soil, as the Convexity of the Hills casts off the Heat, whereby it is not reflected with so much Vehemence; and therefore, when a Man is to ride over such Parts in the Beginning of his Afternoon's Stage, he may set off the sooner: And it is certainly worth any one's while, who is a Stranger in a Country, to have the best Information he can get of all the different Roads thro' which he is to pass. And this is no less necessary in Summer than in Winter, for Travellers are no less liable to Inconveniences when the Days are short, and the Weather cold, than when they are long and hot.

Sandy Roads, which are very troublesome in hot Weather, as they are apt to heat and batter a Horse's Hoofs; so they are convenient in the rainy Seasons of the Year, excepting where there are Quick-sands. And the Clay, which makes a very good Road in the Summer when it is thoroughly paded, and the Surface raised into a light Dust, is however exceeding trouble-

Difference of Roads.



some in Winter, insomuch that an indifferent Horseman travelling in Winter over a Clay-Ground is never out of Danger. If his Horse has not been accustomed to such Ways, he will hardly be able to travel above one Mile in an Hour; and if it be otherwise, that his Horse has been used to such Roads, and is somewhat forward, he is no less exposed to such Accidents; besides that a Horse, by reason of the Tedioufness of such Journeys in cold Weather, often becomes faint, and, for want of Strength, will at last actually suffer; and we may daily see Instances of this Kind.

It is therefore the best Way, when a Man travels thro' such Roads, not to be over-fearful if his Horse be willing; and a good Horseman will not only pick out the best Way, when he perceives his Horse unacquainted, but will also enliven him, that he will get the better of any Road.

The Effects of wet Weather upon Horses.

If a Man could avoid travelling in wet Weather, it would certainly be to his Advantage. For nothing is more injurious and hurtful to Horses of all Kinds, than Rain when it is excessive; and there are few able to bear it, but such as have been pretty much abroad in the Fields, or Carriers, and other Stage-Horses, who, by being constantly upon the Road, are, in some measure, Proof against all Weathers. The Rain has this Effect upon the Body of a Horse that has been used to close and dry keeping, that it constringes all the Pores, even as a sharp Air when a Horse is hot, and consequently renders him liable to all the same Accidents.



The Legs and Feet are carefully to be looked to upon a Journey, because of the manifold Accidents to which they are exposed. Their Shooes should never be suffer'd to wear too smooth; for this is not only bad where the Roads are slippery, but when they grow thin, or are wore at the Toes, they endanger a Horse's Feet, especially when this happens to the Fore-Feet. About *London*, and other Parts, where the Roads are made up with Gravel and small Stones, the Shooes ought to be somewhat raised from the outer Circumference to the inner, but chiefly towards the Spunges, and the Sole to be cut somewhat hollow; for, by this means, the small Stones and Gravel can have no certain Lodgment under the Shooe, as happens sometimes to those who are close shod, but they will fall out with the least Motion; whereas when the Shooe lies flat upon the Foot, it quickly wears down towards the Toe, and the small Pieces of Gravel are apt to stick into the Sole, which sometimes grows prominent, and rises too high; and if there happens at any time to be one of the Corner-Nails loose, the small Stones and Gravel will get under the Shooe, and stick so fast, that a Horse soon becomes gravelled, as the growing out of the Sole also exposes him to be furbated.

Therefore a Man can never be careful enough on a Journey of his Horse's Feet; not only that his Shooes be not suffer'd to grow too bare and thin, but that fresh Nails be drove in as fast as any fall out; and moreover, that the Shooes be as much as possible adapted to the particular Shape and Disposition of the Horse's Feet, which we judge ought not to be bad for a Journey; tho' it is not easy to meet with a Horse

The Care  
that ought  
to be  
taken of  
a Horse's  
Legs and  
Feet upon  
a Jour-  
ney.



absolutely complete in those respects, but may have his Feet incline to one Fault or another. Any one who is well acquainted with the Feet of Horses, and the common Accidents to which they are exposed upon riding a Journey, can never be unmindful of them; but those who have not been much used to travel, ought either to employ Persons skilful in those Matters, as their Servants; or to put the Hostlers in Inns constantly in mind to look upon them, to pick them clean, and to see that nothing be amiss; because a small Accident in the Foot of a Horse may easily be of ill Consequence, if it is not speedily looked after.

The chief  
Accidents  
which  
happen to  
travelling  
Horses:

Besides the Accidents that happen from Falls upon the Road, the Legs are oftentimes exposed to divers Inconveniencies. Sometimes the Knees and Pastern-Joints are injur'd by travelling in deep Clay; and sometimes the Shoulders, by wringing and twisting: And in stony Grounds, Horses that have brittle Hoofs have them oftentimes broke. Besides that, where there is not a very good Defence of Hair, they are apt to be wounded and cut about the *Coronet* and *Vasterns*, which, if not speedily remedy'd, exposes them to the Crown Scab, Kibes, Scratches, and many other Accidents, to which those Parts are easily obnoxious. The flinty Roads in frosty Weather, render them liable to all the same Inconveniencies; and therefore, whenever any one observes his Horse's Feet or Legs to be wounded or fretted upon the Road, he ought to have them wash'd with Chamberlye, and kept very clean, afterwards rubb'd with Spirit of Wine. But when these are to be used, the Horse should be so secured that he cannot strike, because



because the Heat and Sharpness of the Spirits will be apt to make him very unruly.

But there is nothing more carefully to be looked into, upon a Journey, than a Horse's Diet; upon the right ordering of which, a great deal indeed depends. It is not barely the Quantity or Quality of the Food which a Horse eats upon the Road, that is so much to be regarded, as the Way and Manner of his Feeding.

If a Horse has had good Feeding before he begins his Journey, he must, no doubt, go thro' his Labour the better; because all Exercise is prejudicial to any Animal while low and in bad Condition, excepting only what is necessary to maintain the Body in Health, which must be but small, when it wants the Repairs of Food. It is therefore very proper, if a Horse has been harra's'd in any Kind of Labour, or kept low by Want, to strengthen him before he begins to Travel, otherwise he will continue faint throughout the whole Journey, unless his Stages be very short, the Weather temperate, and the Roads good: With such Circumstances, a lean, jaded Horse may indeed become fat and in good Heart, if he be otherways sound; but according to our usual Rate of Journey-Riding, a Horse's Body ought to be prepared before-hand with a sufficient Quantity of proper Food.

Those Horses which are newly come from Grass, ought also to be prepared, by letting them stand so long upon hard Meat, until their Bodies are perfectly accustom'd and familiariz'd to it; otherwise daily Riding upon a Change of Diet would, no doubt, be injurious to them, and expose them to many Accidents, which are too tedious to be mention'd: Besides that a



Horse fed with Grass is by no means fit for any extraordinary Fatigue. Some Persons indeed travel Grass Horses in Summer ; and their Method is to turn them out all Night, at the Places where they take up their Lodgings ; and in the Day they bait them pretty often with Corn or Bread. But those Horses are seldom brought to perform long Journeys : Tho' I cannot say, if they be good in Nature, and not over-rid, but they might do very well, provided they be well dress'd, and have their Provender in sufficient Quantity, and rightly portion'd out and distributed.

Grass is certainly very proper for Horses in the hot Season of the Year, as it keeps their Bodies cool, scours and cleanses their Blood from Impurities : It also keeps them from thirsting too often, which is usual in the Summer to Horses that are altogether fed with Hay and Corn ; but it easily passes thro' the Body ; and a Grass-Horse, when he is rid hard, is continually scouring : And as the Heat and Exercise weakens Digestion, by rarifying the Blood too much, and gorging the Vessels of the Stomach ; so we often observe the Corn which they eat, come away whole in their Dung, which renders them very faint and unfit to go thro' their Work. And therefore, if a Man is under a Necessity of travelling a Grass-Horse, he should neither ride him too hard, nor long Stages ; he ought every now and then to refresh his Body with wet Bran, and his Provender should be clean, and not surfeiting, and administer'd often, tho' the Quantity ought to be but small.

Horses that have gone any time at Grass are, for the most part, foggy, and therefore very  
unfit



unfit for a Journey. They are indeed often full of Flesh, but it is of such a Nature, that it sinks and washes away unmercifully; and therefore when there is no absolute Necessity of bringing a Horse immediately from a Pasture to the Road, the only Way is to keep him up for some time before a Man takes his Journey: And the Time of standing ought, no doubt, to be shorter or longer, according as he is more or less naturally hardy; for some will be more fit to travel in one Week, than others are in a Month. His first Food should be the freshest Hay, and wet Bran; and because he has been altogether at his Liberty in the Fields, where he has been constantly walking and moving about, he ought therefore to be carried abroad every Day into the open Air, and rid or walk'd gently for an Hour or two; neither should his Stable be close, but open and airy: For a Horse that has been accusom'd to the open Air, can never bear to be shut up in a close Stable without being exposed to many Inconveniencies. His Corn should at first be administer'd with a frugal Hand, and the Quantity increas'd, as you find him able to digest it without surfeiting; which is very common to those who have not been used to it: But if by following this Method a Horse grows vigorous and brisk, he will soon be in a Condition to travel, and may, in all respects, be treated as one accusom'd to hard Meat.

In hot Weather, Horses are very apt to thirst much upon the Road; and upon this score most People run into Extremes, some by indulging them too freely, and suffering them to drink at all Places where there is Water; and others by restraining them too much.

The



The Cause of Thirst in hot Weather needs not be explain'd ; for the Heat itself, while a Horse is continually moving in the Sun, as that occasions a more than ordinary Rarefaction of the Blood, and all the other Juices ; and as there is a more than ordinary Expence of the Serous Part, a Horse cannot therefore but thirst vehemently ; and in this Condition, nothing can be worse than restraining him altogether from Water, since it is chiefly that which supplies the Blood with fresh Recruits of *Serum* ; and we may observe in ourselves, that nothing is so insupportable as Thirst, and nothing renders us more faint.

But besides the bare Heat of the Weather, which in Summer is alone sufficient to excite a more than ordinary Thirst, a great deal is also owing to the Food and Exercise ; for if a Horse be over-much gorged, or if he happens to be rid too hard upon a full Stomach in hot Weather, or if he eats heartily upon his coming into the Stable while he is hot, it will soon induce a Surfeit, which must unavoidably cause an insatiable Desire of Drink ; and the more especially, because the Food of Horses, excepting Grass, has little or no Moisture ; and therefore a Horse should be so ordered upon a Journey, that he may thirst as little as possible : And the most proper Method for that Purpose, must be to follow the foregoing Directions carefully, *viz.* to set off as early in the Morning as possible in hot Weather, to rest as long as may be in the Middle of the Day, and to finish every Day's Journey by putting up at Night before the Damps fall ; for these are of very bad Consequence to all Horses, excepting to such as run at Grass, and are habituated to the Night Air.

The



The Method of Feeding should be after this Sort : A Horse upon a Journey, if he is not brought cool into his Inn, ought, after rubbing, to be walk'd gently for some time ; and that he be not injured with his own Sweat, (which, when it cools upon him, will be apt to strike a Damp over his whole Body) he ought to be first scraped, and then well dry'd all about his Head and Ears. And when he is put up into the Stable, let him have nothing but a little fresh Hay well dusted ; and as soon as he is grown perfectly cool, he may be either carry'd out to Water, or have a Pailful in the Stable. If it be at Night, one Half of his Allowance of Corn may be given him soon after his Water, and the other Half about two Hours after that : And I would not advise any one to be fearful of letting him have a little more Water after the last Feeding, because he must undoubtedly eat his Hay the better, and thereby lay in good Store for the next Day's Journey.

The Quantity of Corn to be given a Horse upon a Journey, is in a great measure discretionary ; and if any particular Rules are to be observed, the Proportion of Food ought to be according to a Horse's Size and Labour ; for, no doubt, a large sized Horse must naturally require more Food to sustain him, than one that is small ; and when a Horse is spent and fatigued by Labour, he must also require more Sustenance than at other Times ; but yet, as these Rules are not without Exception, we ought chiefly to be guided by Experience and Observation ; and we should allow our Horses such Quantities of Provender, as we find necessary to support them under the particular Service we require of them.

When

Directi-  
ons for  
Feeding.



When a Horse travels, the Night is the proper time of giving his largest Allowance; because he has not only Time to digest it, but the Food which he then eats, composes him to Rest, and so as to lay himself down, which wonderfully refreshes any Horse: And tho' a Horse ought not to be neglected in the Morning, yet his Allowance needs be but small; and if it was large, it would be prejudicial; for when a Horse sets out with a full Stomach, he is continually receiving refresh Supplies into the Mass of Blood; and by his Exercise, all the Vessels are soon filled beyond measure. The Weight and Distention of the Stomach is also prejudicial; for besides that the Exercise hinders Digestion, the Stomach, by reason of its Position, presses forwards upon the Midriff, hindring the free Action of the Lungs, which at that time must also be distended and full of Blood. And this is, no doubt, the Reason why many Horses are oftentimes hurt in their Wind, when their Riders drive and hurry them on without Mercy, upon their first setting out in the Morning.

Many Horses feed plentifully in the Night, so that in the Morning their Bellies will be round and full: A Horse in this Condition ought to have but a small Feeding of Oats for Breakfast, and at first should be rid very gently, to preserve his Wind. Any Traveller had much better give his Horse a small Refreshment the sooner; and it is an easy Matter to know when a Horse wants it, for he will be apt to hang his Head, and rest heavy upon the Hand, as soon as he grows empty; but when he comes out full, tho' he may sometimes go on somewhat heavily at first, yet afterwards he will mend his Pace of his



his own accord; and then is, no doubt, the Time for a Man to make the best of his way.

His Feeding ought also to be moderate at Noon, but especially if he be hot, and is very inclinable on the Way to drink. This Disposition to Thirst is greatly increased by making short Stays on the Road, and feeding Horses when their Blood is all in a Ferment. All Travellers ought to ride moderately before they first put up at any Inn to bait, because, as has been observed, the Blood-Vessels of the Stomach are often distended beyond measure; and in hot Weather the Serous Part of the Blood is much exhausted, so that Food in this Case cannot easily digest.

Some Horses, when their Bodies are not season'd to travelling, and have had too violent Exercise upon the Road, lose their Appetite; and when they are set up, can eat nothing, but hang their Heads to the Manger. This proceeds from an over-great Distention of the Vessels of the Stomach, which, in some Cases, is inflam'd. We may also observe a more than ordinary heaving of the Flanks, with a Difficulty of breathing: But if the Horse's Blood happens not to be very much distemper'd, he will begin to Feed after he has stood some Hours, and that the Blood has had time to run off from the small Vessels into those that are larger. This is however very dangerous, and ought to be avoided by a more gentle Usage; for the Consequence is generally *Chest-sounding*; or the breaking of a Horse's Wind, and sometimes it is follow'd with the *Vives*. And next to violent Exercise, nothing will more readily help on such Accidents, than restraining a Horse too much from Drink in hot Weather; for

Some Errors in feeding upon a Journey.



for if there be a more than ordinary Expence of the Serous Part of the Blood, it must, no doubt, become viscid, and by that means readily stagnate, when it is urged into the smallest Vessels by the Heat of the Weather, or by immoderate Exercise upon full Feeding, or any other such Usage.

Observations concerning a Horse's Drink.

Water is so absolutely necessary to dilute the Blood, that without it no Animal can subsist long; and tho' nothing is more prejudicial than bad Water, or giving it at unseasonable Times; so on the other hand, there is nothing more beneficial when given with Discretion. Our Pack-Horses, notwithstanding they carry heavy Burthens, and travel at all times of the Year, yet they are never restrain'd, but drink when they please; and no Horses are more lasting and durable than they, nor less subject to Accidents. Journey-Horses might, no doubt, be as freely indulged in this respect, if it was not that they are sometimes rid into an over-great Fume. The Water of Rivers and Ponds is generally warm in Summer; and for that Reason, unless the Rider has over-heated his Horse too much, he may let him now and then drink upon the Road, and with less Danger than at an *Inn*, where they oftentimes have nothing but Well-Water, which in the hot Season is rather too chilling and cold for Travelling-Horses. Cold Water is indeed the most grateful; but as there are other more important Ends to be answered by Drink besides bare cooling the Body, *viz.* the Diluting of the Blood, we ought rather to prefer that which is warm'd with the Sun; and we have the more Reason so to do from the Example of those Creatures themselves, who, when they are left



to their Liberty, at all times choose to drink of the Brook or Pond, rather than the clearest Spring, tho' in the hottest Weather.

The best Way therefore upon a Journey is to ride gently in hot Weather; and by this means no one needs be ever fearful of letting his Horse refresh himself now and then with a little Water: But when a Horse has an over-great Propensity to drink, at the same time he has not been hard rid, that is, no doubt, a feverish Symptom, which may either have been occasion'd by the Heat of the Weather in Summer, or by some Mismanagement in his Feeding. The same Symptom likewise happens in Winter, and not seldom from the last mention'd Cause, as also to some Horses of weak, lax Dispositions, when they have not been us'd to Exercise: So that whenever a Horse is observ'd to have too great an Inclination to drink, he ought, no doubt, to be restrain'd; and if he be costive, a Clyster ought to be administer'd with *Sal Polychrestum*; but if he has a Scouring and a Looseness upon him, he ought to rest until that Symptom wears off; for when a Scouring is accompany'd with excessive Thirst, it always denotes a *Diarrhaea*: Wherefore he ought to have those Things administred, that are proper in such Maladies. But in most Cases, where there is an over-great Thirst, either upon a Journey or any other Labour, it will be very proper to boil two or three Ounces of the best White-Wine *Tartar* grossly powder'd in your Horse's Water; this will very much cool and refresh him without exposing him to Danger, and will alone suffice to take off that Symptom, when it has only been caused by a little over-



over-hard Riding, or by the Heat of the Weather, or from any other such Accident.

Staling  
upon a  
Journey.

But there is one thing which ought very much to be regarded, as it contributes greatly to a Horse's well doing upon a Journey, and that is never to restrain a Horse from *Staling*. When the Urine is too long detain'd, it causes Heat and Inflammation, and sometimes a Swelling in the Neck of the Bladder; sometimes it turns sharp, and more than ordinary acid; and when a Horse in this Condition goes to Stale, he will labour and groan. And sometimes all the same Symptoms proceed from Costiveness, *viz.* when the Excrements become hard, and are so much pent up in the great Gut, that they press upon the Neck of the Bladder, and thereby streighten the Passage, that a Horse cannot stale freely, but with Pain. All these Symptoms ought to be carefully looked into; and a Man should never urge on his Horse so upon the Road, as to hinder him from pissing; nor ought he to drive him forwards at any time when he stops to piss; but on the contrary, the Rider should now and then stop where there is a moderate Ascent to stretch a Horse's Legs, or where there is Water, that he may be provoked to stale; for the Discharge of the Urine greatly relieves a Horse upon a Journey.

*Solleysell* observes, that Staling often upon the Road is very profitable to any Horse or Gelding, but hurtful to Mares between Mails; and desires any one who shall think this an odd Remark, to make Trial of it, and they will find it certainly true. That Author gives no Reason for this Defect in Mares, and why Staling often should weaken a Mare more than a Horse; and indeed it is not very easy to give  
one,



one, excepting only that Mares are of a more delicate Make, and may more readily suffer by any Discharge that is to Excess, than Horses; but especially as they are more easily prompted to Discharges of that Kind, by reason of the Position of the Neck of the Bladder, and the Largeness of the Aperture under the *Pubis*; and for that Reason, it may be profitable on a Journey not to suffer a Mare to stale too often, tho' to restrain her altogether between Meals, as that Author advises, may, in some Cases, be prejudicial. The surest Method to prevent a Mare from staling too much on the Road, is to keep her in such Order, as she may not be inclined to thirst too often. The Effect that Drink has upon the Urine being very different, as the Animal Body happens to be with or without Exercise; for Exercise precipitates and throws such a Quantity upon the Kidneys, that in all weak and lax Bodies it will cause a more than ordinary Discharge of the Urine; and as all Discharges, when they are excessive, must, no doubt, weaken; so it may not be improbable, that Mares suffer more than Horses in this respect.

The Retention of the Dung is likewise a <sup>Dunging</sup> Prejudice to Horses upon a Journey, as is also <sup>or Reten-</sup> an Excess the other way; and, no doubt, both <sup>tion</sup> these Extremes may be sometimes owing to the <sup>thereof.</sup> Rider. Some Persons ride so unmercifully, and continue their Horses so long upon the Gallop, that they have no Liberty to dung for a great while together. When the Dung is retain'd beyond its usual time, besides other Accidents to which it exposes a Horse, it induces Costiveness, and Colick Disorders; and if a Horse be rid hard when he has a Lax or Scouring, it



will very readily increafe that Malady alfo; and as thefe are both of them very inconvenient, they ought to be avoided by using a Horfe tenderly, eſpecially when a great deal of Service is required of him. How theſe Accidents are to be managed, has already been declared.

Washing  
Horfes  
upon their  
Arrival at  
the Inn.

Some waſh their Horſes in ſome convenient Pond or River before they bring them to their Inn: But I think moſt are of Opinion, that a Horſe ought never to be rid up to his Belly. This is certainly very reaſonable, if a Horſe be hot, for nothing can be more prejudicial at that time, than cold Water to the Belly; and if he was never ſo cool, it cannot be ſafe to wet his Belly, unleſs he has been conſtantly uſed to it; tho' upon a Journey, a Horſe, with good Uſage, will, no doubt, ſooner overcome Accidents than at other times (Lamenefs only excepted;) yet if a Horſe's Belly be wet, eſpecially one that has not been accuſtomed to it, or when he is hot, it may eaſily bring on a violent Fitt of the Colick, which, if not ſuddenly removed, is as dangerous a Symptom as any can happen to a Horſe. *Solleyſell* takes Notice of an *Italian* Riding-Maſter, who uſed to ſwim all his managed Horſes, when they come hot from the Manage, over a River as broad as the *Seine*, before the *Louvre* in *Paris*, and made them repaſs the ſame back again. And it ſeems this Method ſucceeded ſo well with that Gentleman's Horſes, that none of 'em were ever known to have the leaſt Fitt of the Colick; and none continued ſo ſound and perfect, nor ſo clean Limb'd. The River had, no doubt, the ſame Effect upon theſe Horſes, as the cold Bath upon the Human Body, viz. by promoting the Diſcharges of the Skin, and the Circulation



Circulation in the extreme and outward Parts, whereby the Body must be strengthned and invigorated. If any one among us was to follow this Method with their Horses, and only dry them afterwards with a Cloth, and continue in the Use of it every Day, or as often as they had Conveniency, their Horses would probably be hardy, and able to bear more Fatigue than is usual: But such a Method cannot be put in Practice, without some Danger at first; the best Way therefore is to begin when a Horse is perfectly well, and he will at length become so hardy, as to bear it at any time.

The same Author complains of the Custom <sup>Rubbing</sup> most People in *France* had, in his Time, of <sup>the Legs</sup> rubbing their Horses Legs, as soon as they come into the Stable, and prefers to that, the washing of them with a Pail of Water, or leading them through some Pond, and then drying them with a little Straw or Hay, without any more ado, till they are perfectly cold: He observes, that nothing exposes a Horse so much to Gourdiuess and Swelling, as is usual in their Legs, as agitating the Humours while they are all afloat after Travel. Both these Methods are still retain'd among us, some rub them immediately, and others only wash them. The latter is, no doubt, preferable upon this Account, that no Rubbing before a Horse is dry, will make him perfectly clean, but a great deal of the Clay and Dirt must lodge among the Hair, which creates an additional Heat in those Parts, notwithstanding they are apt to be overheated by the Activity of the Blood, immediately after Riding, which easily flows into them, and, by reason of its Quantity, is also



more easily obstructed than at other Times; but the Water not only washes off their Dirt and Clay, but also invigorates and refreshes the Parts themselves: But in some Cases, where Horses are more than ordinary disposed to Gourdiness and Swelling in their Legs, it will be very necessary to rub them well, after they are thoroughly cool, and likewise to apply Cow's Dung and Brandy mixt together by way of Cataplasm; but if, upon feeling your Horse's Legs, you find them hot, and inflamed, as it sometimes happens, a cold Charge of *Vinegar* and *Bole* will be very proper to lie on all Night, and nothing can be better to defend them from an Influx of Humours. Sometimes Fomentations may be used, and those are chiefly to be preferr'd, wherein Ashes of green Twigs have been boiled; but our ordinary Horses have only their Legs wash'd with Chamberlye, which often succeeds very well.

Accidents  
happen-  
ing to the  
Legs upon  
the Road.

Both the hot and cold Weather are apt to affect the Legs, especially of young Horses, or those that are foggy, or any ways plethorick and full-body'd; but most Horses are more remarkably inclinable to Gourdiness, when they travel in the beginning of Winter, than at any other time. The Reason of which is not difficult, because the first Approaches of the Cold, affects the Body of all Creatures, more than when they are season'd to it, but especially in the Intervals of Rest after Exercise. When the Body is in Action, it is then thoroughly warm'd, and the Blood is put into a brisker Motion, than at other Times. That which flows into the smaller Vessels, and moves but slowly in time of Rest, is by Motion put into an Agitation; and a Horse must rest some time before



before this Agitation ceases; because, as has been observed, the Blood is also more rarify'd and thin during the Exercise: So as soon as a Horse is set up in a Stable, after a Day's riding, the Blood and Humours by their Rarefaction and habitual Appetite to Motion, flow faster, and in greater Quantity than ordinary, into all the small Vessels towards the Extremities, but especially of the Limbs, because of their dependant Situation; but when they are not in Exercise, those Juices must of Necessity stagnate, not only as they become more condensed and thick, but for want of the Contraction of the Muscles: The return cannot be forwarded; but a greater Quantity of those Juices must unavoidably be thrown in by the Arteries, than can be brought back by the Veins. And this is, no doubt, the Reason why such Horses, as are either of a delicate Nature, or foul-body'd, are apt to have their Legs swell every Night upon a Journey. And it happens more so in Winter than in Summer, because the Coldness of the Air contracts the Vessels of the Extremities of the Limbs; by which means, when the Blood is thrown into the smaller Arteries and Veins, the Pressure and Sharpness thereof shuts up the Pores, that the usual Discharges cannot be made from those Parts, but a Swelling must of Consequence happen. And we see by daily Experience, that nothing proves so immediate a Relief in such a Case, as renewing the Exercise; for no sooner a Horse in this Condition has been rid two or three Miles, but the Swelling commonly abates, and his Legs become again as clean as ever.

And this Observation alone may lead us into the true Way of preventing those Kind of Accidents,



cidents, which, unless such Disorders proceed from mere Weakness and Imbecillity, should chiefly be effectuated by a Continuation in daily Exercise. And this is even proper after a Journey; tho' in regard a Horse may be tired and weary, it ought to be but moderate. Any one who will practise this Method, and lead his Horse, or have him gently rid out every Day after a Journey, will find the Stiffness and Weariness go off much sooner, than if his Horse was to be kept up altogether without Exercise; neither will he be exposed to such Accidents, as we find too commonly happen to the Legs and Pasterns, from the settling of the Humours in those Parts, which are chiefly owing to the sudden and abrupt Change from Exercise to Rest.

Rubbing,  
Currying  
and  
Cloathing

The Rubbing, Currying, and Cloathing of a Horse upon a Journey, is also a great Means of his Preservation; besides that it refreshes a Horse, cheers his Spirits, and makes his Rest pleasant, and enables him to set off the next Day with a great deal of Alacrity. Indeed some plain Horses are never used to this way of Keeping, and yet will continue more hardy and durable than those who are taken Care of with all the Delicacy in the World; even as some Clowns will bear all manner of Hardship and Fatigue better than Gentlemen; but the Services of a Horse in good keeping are a thousand times more pleasant to the Rider; and there is nothing wanting to make these Horses as lasting and durable as any other, but a constant Care in the Owner, that their usual Dressing never be omitted.

When a Horse is extremely hot, he ought not to be rubb'd too violently, for that is apt  
to



to increase the Heat, and dispose him too much to Sweat; but after the Sweat has been scraped off, as directed, he should only be wiped with a Cloth, and by this means he will be sooner dry than by any contrary Method. The ungirting the Saddle, flacking the Crowper, or any other of the Furniture, is also very necessary; and the Method of those who put Straw or Hay under the Belly is no less useful, but the putting Wisps under the Saddle may be injurious, especially to tender Horses; as the raising up the Saddle draws in the cold Air too much on that Part which has been the most heated. Methinks it is more commendable to lay a dry Cloth or Piece of Canvas between the Saddle and the Horse's Back: Tho' most People think it enough to let the Saddle lie on until the Horse is quite cool.

We need not lay down any Directions concerning Cloathing, save only that a Horse ought to be warmer cloathed in Winter than in Summer; for nothing is more oppressive in hot Weather: Tho' it must be confess'd, the more a Horse is cloath'd, the smoother and finer it makes his Coat. The additional Heat that Cloaths give a Horse makes him also perspire the more freely; and where this Method is constantly comply'd with, it, no doubt, makes Horses the more brisk and lively; and there is only this Inconveniency attends it, that a Horse, when once used to Cloathing, can never be uncloathed one Night without the Hazard of catching Cold.





## C H A P. IX.

*How Draught-Horses, or such as carry Loads, or do other laborious Service, ought to be order'd.*

The Team  
or Wag-  
gon.

**H**AVING laid down the proper Method of ordering travelling Horses, we are, in the next place, to take some Notice of those that Work; under which Term, are chiefly understood Draught-Horses, or such as carry Burdens. If proper Care be taken of labouring Horses, they may last many Years in good Condition. And there is no Labour which exposes a Horse so much to Accidents as drawing in a Coach. The Team, or Waggon, always goes at a slow Rate; and unless where there happens to be very bad Road, or in Places where there are steep Ascents, their Labour is uniform; and is so far from being injurious and hurtful, that nothing conduces more to the Health of those Horses, which are large and fit for Draught. As this is the Business assign'd to them by their Make and Size; so we can never meet with any of them in so good a Condition, as when they are taken out of a Farmer's Team. Drawing makes them not only eat heartily, but digest what they eat; so that their Food turns to good Nourishment: And while they are in this Service, they are exposed to no Accidents after their Shoulders are once harden'd, but such as may easily be avoided.

But



But the drawing in a Coach has a quite different Effect upon the Bodies of those large Horses: And, besides the Inconveniences at first from the Harness, they are oftentimes put out to a full Trot, which, albeit, they have no Rider, yet, as has been observed, their own Weight exposes them to Chest-Foundring, and many other Accidents; especially, to such as affect their Wind; and by reason many of that Kind are thick and fleshy about their Legs and Pasterns, they are, upon the least Excess, either of Feeding or Exercise, subject to Gourdiness and Swellings in those Parts, and to all the other Accidents subsequent thereunto.

The Labour of Coach-Horses is not very hard while they only work in the Streets; and the greatest and most necessary Care to be had of them, is of their Feet, that they be well shod; and they should be frequently looked to, that they be not wounded with rusty Nails, Pieces of Glass, or Earthen Ware, which People are apt to throw out of their Houses. The Coachmen ought also in cold Weather never suffer them to stand too long without gently moving them: And if he be so hemm'd in, that he cannot have room to drive; as sometimes happens, he ought now and then let them hear the Lash; and even sometimes touch them gently with it, unless they be such as are full of Mettle and Spirit, which alone will keep them in sufficient Action, and be the Means to prevent many of those Accidents which happen to others of a sluggish, unactive Disposition.

But those which draw Stage-Coaches into the Country, are exposed to several Accidents, and their Labour is, for the most part, pretty hard; tho' this is oftentimes owing to the Drivers



vers or Stage-Coachmen, who rather than not indulge themselves by tarrying too long at some Places, are forced to hurry over a good Part of the Way, that they may accomplish their Set Journies. Sometimes those Persons, though they are thoroughly acquainted with the Road, take no great Care, but where they are good, drive their Horses until they are all in a Foam; and in that Condition bring them into Places, which are either deep with Water or Clay, and where they cannot move but at a very slow Pace, whereby they are exposed to great Colds. But although a constant Use upon the Road may habituate the Bodies of those Horses, so as they may bear frequent Heats and Colds, without any immediate Injury: Yet such Usage as this must unavoidably be felt one Time or other; and Horses that have been treated after this Manner soon grow old and unserviceable.

It is no doubt reasonable as well as necessary for all Coachmen to make the best of their Way, where the Roads are good; but they ought, at the same time, to drive more softly before they come into those Parts, where they cannot move a sufficient Pace to keep their Horses in a reasonable Degree of Heat. These Instructions may also be useful to Gentlemens Coachmen, who often fall into the same Error when they go into the Country; but the Hazard is the less, with respect to them, as they are commonly better provided with a Number of Horses, by which means they are not so tedious, but get through the bad Way sooner than the other, especially when their Horses have been used to the Country Roads.

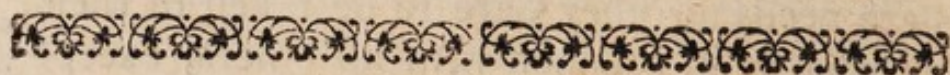


Nothing looks more graceful, than to see a Coach drawn by managed Horses; but these are chiefly fit to make an Appearance, and not for Drudgery. The Lessons in the Manage make them strike with such Force upon the Ground, that they are very apt to have their Feet batter'd, especially in the Roads about *London*, where there are so many sharp Stones, which in the Summer-Time lie very loose, so that a managed Horse cannot move with Stability, but is exposed to divers Accidents. And in Winter the Tracts are in many Places so narrow, that they have not sufficient Play; and some Places are so miry that they throw up the Dirt intolerably; and therefore, those who have a Sett of managed Horses for their Coaches ought always to have another for Labour and Drudgery.

As for those Horses which carry Burdens, <sup>Horses which carry Bur-</sup> there needs no other Care to be taken of them, <sup>dens.</sup> but what is in common with all others, excepting that their Pillions and Packfaddles be well fitted, so as not to pinch or gall them; and that their Loads be not more than they are able to bear. A Load, when it is too heavy, must needs injure a Horse very much; it exposes him to a *swaying* of the *Back*, to Bursteness, Pissing of Blood, Strains in the Shoulders and Loins, and likewise to Accidents in the Knees, Hams, and Pastern Joints, sometimes to Chest-Foundring, and to other Mischances which affect the Wind. And as all Things ought to be moderate in the Beginning, so a Horse that is to carry Burdens, should, contrary to the usual Method of some, have his first Loads but of a moderate Weight; and they may be increased to a Horse's Strength and Ability. When  
the



the Saddle, Pillions, and all the other Appurtenances of a Pack-Horse, are rightly fitted, and his Load adjusted to his Strength and Ability, which is easily known after a short Trial; and that a right OEconomy is also observed in his Feeding, &c. he will last many Years in that Service: And that some Horses, tho' they be injured in their Wind, will, nevertheless, carry Burdens of a moderate Weight, because their Walk is easy, and their Exercise no other than what conduces very much to their Preservation. In short, there are no Services wherein a Horse will continue longer than in Carriage or Drawing: Those being to strong large Horses no other than what is convenient to keep them in a perfect State of Health; for as their Bodies are, for the most part, gross and heavy, their proper Business is Work or Labour, and not Riding.



## C H A P. X.

*Concerning the Diet of Horses while in the Manage, and the Accidents to which they are exposed; with the Method to prevent them.*

**A**S the Manage is no other than Exercise, we are to consider and order a Horse's Diet and Keeping according as his Labour in the School is more or less violent; and this depends very much upon the Temper and Disposition of the Horse; there being some much more stubborn than others, and for that Reason



undergo much Hardship. And likewise Horses that are Strangers to those Exercises when they are put first into the Manage, being oftentimes fearful, and altogether unacquainted with the Business, must therefore, in the Beginning, suffer very much; so that they are no otherwise to be order'd in their Feeding, than Horses that have been over-heated in any other Labour.

As their Food ought to be in Proportion to <sup>How man-</sup> their Labour, so their Allowance of Provender <sup>naged</sup> should be given them Three Times a Day, <sup>Horses</sup> Morning, Noon, and Night. Their Breakfast <sup>should be</sup> or first Allowance should, as *Solleysell* directs, be administred Two Hours before they are brought to School, that they may neither be compell'd to labour upon a full Stomach, nor come altogether empty, lest they should flag and be unable to go through their Business; the next should be given Two or Three Hours after their Exercise; and in the Evening their Allowance may be given all at once, or divided into Two equal Portions, and given at Twice, as the Keeper shall see necessary.

After they have been harais'd, and gone through their assigned Tasks, if they be hot, they should be rid gently out of the Manage by some Riding-Master, or other good Horseman, who will not spoil their Mouth, or do any Thing in Contradiction to what has been taught them; and this is to be done after the Sweat has been first scraped off: And they ought to be continued in that gentle Exercise until they be perfectly cool, and fit to be put in the Stable, where they must be carefully rubb'd and dress'd; for managed Horses, because of the sudden Heats to which they are often exposed, require the most careful Keeping of any other.

But



But the greatest Inconveniences that can happen to managed Horses, are owing to their several Tempers and Dispositions; no Horse ought to be instructed in the Manage, who is not of a docible Temper, and of a Shape and Make fit for those Exercises. An unskilful Riding-Master may easily spoil a good Horse, while he strives to make him do what is contrary to his Nature: And if a Man be impatient and passionate; he may also ruin the most tractable Horse in the World. I believe there are not a few Instances of this Kind, among the Pretenders to Horsemanship. The not weighing a Horse's Age and Ability also exposes many Horses to Accidents, when they are brought into the Manage before their Joints are well knit, and their Muscles grown firm, and able to endure hard Exercise.

It must indeed be own'd, that Youth is the only Time for all Creatures to be habituated to particular bodily Exercises. A Man would make but a sorry Dancer, who begins to learn at Thirty Years of Age; neither would he make so good a Horseman or a Swordsman, as if he was to begin sooner; and it is even difficult to teach a Soldier, Lifted at that Age, the true Exercise of his Arms, so as to make it familiar and easy to him. But yet there is this Difference, with respect to Horses, that are to be taught in the Manage, that as they are without Reason, so they ought while Young, and not arrived to their Perfection, neither in Strength nor Sagacity, be used with all the Tenderneſs imaginable. If they have been already backed, and imbibed ill Habits, the Labour will be the more difficult; and if to that be added a forward Disposition, it will be next to an impossibility



sibility to bring them to any Thing, without the greatest Hazard.

If they are to be managed altogether by the strong Hand, they should be prepared by Abstemiousness, which will not only check their Mettle, but expose them less to Accidents; whereas, when they are harassed, and, at the same time, young, lusty, and full of Blood, the violent Heats they are then put into, and the sudden Agitations of Body renders them liable to Strains in the Joints, or to Surfeits. The Consequence of which is, either Lameness, or *putrid* or *malignant* Fevers; or else the Humours, by taking their Tendency to particular Parts, fall upon the *Livor*, *Lungs*, or *Kidneys*, or some other of the inward Parts, causing a *Waste* and Decay of Body; or fall into the Eyes, and other Parts about the Head; and indeed *Dimness* and Loss of Sight is not an unfrequent Accident to Horses that have been in the Manage: Sometimes they fall into the Legs and occasion Gourdiness and Swelling, which by reason of that previous State of Body prove to be of the worst Tendency. But if a Horse be used to moderate Exercise, and rid by a careful Person, and his Body otherwise prepared by moderate Feeding before he be put into the Manage, he will the better bear the Scourge, or any other harsh Method; especially if this Caution be observed, that when a Horse happens to be somewhat low in Feeding, his Labour ought to be proportion'd to it, and his Lessons short.

The Lessons in the Manage are so extensive, that they require a great deal of Time before a Horse can be perfectly Master of them; and though a Horse begins while he is but young, he will, for the most part, be arrived

to



to his Prime, before he can become a well drefs'd Horfe: And therefore no Horses ought to be put into the *Manage* to be completely drefs'd, but such as are worth the Expence, and can be spared for some time from all other Service. The hurrying Horses faster than they have Capacity, which the Riding-Masters are often obliged to do, in Compliance with the Owners, not only exposes them to many Accidents, but is also the Reason why so many Horses are only half taught, and are not so much as complete in any one Lesson; so that they soon forget all they have learnt.

Their different Genius.

All Horses have a greater Propensity, and indeed a better natural Disposition to some Lessons than others. It should therefore be the Business of the Riding-Master, as soon as he perceives what Part of the *Manage* a Horse is most fit for, to instruct him thoroughly in that, and not be over solicitous to compel him to such Actions as are absolutely against the Grain; for in all Things we are chiefly to follow Nature; for whatever is done in Contradiction to her, can never succeed as it ought to do: But the best temper'd Horse in the World will, by Compulsion, prove stubborn and obstinate, and thereby be exposed to Accidents, which otherwise would not happen to him.

All Beginnings ought to be moderate, the better to avoid Accidents, and the most easy Lessons taught first; and those especially which are the Ground-Work of others. And to this purpose, the Method in the Riding-Schools is certainly very good, of making young Horses go round a single Pillar, without a Rider, that they may be accusom'd to perform those circular Motions with their natural Trot, before they are brought

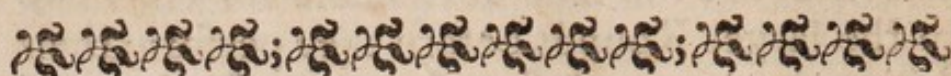


brought to that which is more graceful: And it is no doubt the most reasonable for Horses to go the larger Rounds before they perform their Actions in a more close and narrow Circle; and the Actions of the Circle ought, no doubt, to be perform'd before a Horse is brought to those of the Square; as the latter are more difficult and hard to be attain'd than the former.

There is no Part of a Horse's Body but may suffer in one or other of the Lessons in the Riding-School, particularly the Reins and Joints; and for that Reason the Suppling of the Joints, which is generally first practis'd, is very reasonable: But no Horse ought to be wrought long at one Time; but his Lessons at first shou'd be short, not only as his Joints will suffer the less, but as he will not conceive a Reluctancy, but be the more ready to begin afresh as soon as the Rider calls him to it. This must, no doubt, make that, which otherwise wou'd be a Toil, a great Pleasure, both to the Horse and his Teacher; and a Horse that is brought gradually from one Step to another, will, in Time, find those Actions the most easy, which at first were the most painful. And thus it is, that the chief Means of preserving Horses from Accidents, while in the Manage, is in a great Measure owing to the Direction and good Understanding of the Riding-Master, who should himself be a Man of Temper, and one greatly vers'd in the various Dispositions and Inclinations of Horses: And in this respect it would also be of no small Service to those who have the Care and Teaching of Horses in the Manage, if they were also somewhat acquainted with the OEconomy and inward Structure of their Bodies, as well as their outward Make.

A Horse exposed to all manner of Accidents in the Manage.





## C H A P. XI.

*Observations concerning the Diet and Exercise of Running Horses.*

**T**H E R E is nothing more nice or of greater Judgment, than the preparing a Horse for a Match or Course : And to perform this Task as it ought to be, not only requires a moderate Insight into the Animal O<sup>E</sup>conomy, but of every Thing that may be profitable or hurtful thereunto, besides a continued Practice among Horses ; for our Business here is not barely to feed and order a Horse as for common Service, but for the severest of all Exercises ; and therefore a Horse that is to run a Career, ought to be in the most perfect State of Health ; that is, he should as far as his Nature is capable, be vigorous, strong, hardy and active.

As to the particular Kind of Horses made use of for Running, they are sufficiently known in this Kingdom, not to need any other Description, save only that they are not of the Strongest Kind, nor of the Weakest, but are such as by their slender Make, are so nimble and agile, as to excel all others in Speed ; but in what relates to their Ability of continuing long in in such violent Exercises, a great deal is, without doubt, owing to their right Keeping.



The Diversion of Horse-Racing is so common among us, that almost every Groom pretends something to the Knowledge, how a Horse ought to be prepared for it; and there have been so many particular Rules and Instructions laid down for this Purpose, and many of those so good, that we need not insist so peremptorily as some have done, especially in the smaller Circumstances of Cleaning and Dressing, but shall chiefly take Notice of all those Things which we judge most material in the Diet and Exercise; as that which is of greatest Importance to our present Purpose, and what is the least understood. For altho' Time and Experience has long ago brought us to the Knowledge of many Errors and Mistakes that have been practised in the Dieting Race-Horses: Yet the most exact Methods I have hitherto seen are wanting and deficient, or too precise and circumstantial; and the best written Instructions we have, are either incumber'd with the last mention'd Faults, or are so obscure and immethodical, that it is not an easy Matter to follow them.

After the Choice of a Horse, we require of him, that he be so fed and harden'd by Exercise, as to go through what we propose him to do with Vigour and Activity; and in order thereunto, the previous State of his Body ought to be enquired into; for if a Horse be diseased, and lies under any Chronical Distemper, he cannot be fit for a Match or Course in the ordinary Time allotted for Preparation, which is commonly Six Weeks, or Two Months; and there are some who never keep up a Horse above a Month. But as to the Time, it cannot be certainly determin'd, because all Horses are



not alike ; but some will be harden'd and fitted for any Manner of Exercise much sooner than others. And yet there is no Horse who may not be in good Case to run in the Space of Two Months at most, if he has been in any tolerable Order before he was kept up and dieted.

For I would never advise any one to be at the Expence of dieting a Horse for Running, who is of a tender watshy Constitution ; for notwithstanding such an one may have the Advantage of many others in point of Speed, yet he will never be able to perform a Course of any Length : And sometimes we see Horses of this Kind carefully dieted, from a mere Fondness in the Owner, notwithstanding they are not able to go through the preparatory Heats, without losing as much as they have gain'd during their Keeping. But when a Person, after full Trial, is assured not only of his Horse's Speed, but likewise of his natural Strength and Ability, whatever ordinary Inconveniences he may lie under, may easily be remedy'd.

A running  
Horse  
should  
neither be  
overmuch  
charged  
with  
Flesh, nor  
too lean.

The first Thing regarded in the Dieting a Running Horse, after enquiring into the State of his Body ; and that which is chiefly aim'd at, is, to bring his Constitution to a *Medium*, that he be neither over-much charged with Flesh, nor too lean ; and this is accomplish'd by an exact and careful Management of his Diet, wherein is included Exercise, Dressing, and all the Requisites of good Keeping. When a Horse happens to be purfive and foul, the properest Method is to begin with Evacuation, by taking away a moderate Quantity of Blood in the first place, afterwards to give him Scourings



rings to cleanse his Body ; but when he happens to be low, if that has proceeded either from penurious and scanty Feeding, or from violent Exercise, a contrary Method from the former is for the most part to be comply'd with ; and that Horse must have Rest and Food to repair his Constitution before he can be put to severe Labour.

The first Case is much more easy than the latter ; and a Horse is, no doubt, sooner brought low than he can be raised up ; but yet if there has been no previous Indisposition, caus'd by some lingering Sickness, he will last much better in any smart Exercise, than one that has been full fed, where the Aids of Physick must be call'd in to bring him in Case.

When a Horse is low in Flesh, and that has proceeded from the above-mention'd Causes, such as Riding much, or short Allowance, he must be sooner fit for smart Exercise ; because when there is a just Measure and Proportion of Food discreetly given, it is all that is necessary besides Dressing ; neither can he be expos'd to so many Accidents, as if his Body had been full and of a gross Habit : It being hard to determine the Time when such an one will be able to bear sufficient Exercise : For altho' the taking down or abating a Horse's Luxuriancy of Body, no doubt, makes him more sprightly than he was before ; yet all Abatements from the Animal Body, if they be sudden, must of Consequence also abate the Force and Energy of the Spirits : And albeit a Horse thus managed may at first setting off out-do the Wind in Speed, yet he will seldom continue in it, unless there be a considerable Time given to harden him ; and therefore it must be a great Er-



ror in those Persons, who bring a Horse that was fat and full fed, too low for a Course; unless it be very short, and on light Ground. And as all sudden Changes in the Animal Body exposes very much also to Accidents, so those Persons can never err, who allow themselves sufficient Time in preparing a Horse for a Match, if it be one that is laborious, and requires Strength to its Performance.

The particular Method of Dieting for a Race.

But that this may be the better apply'd, we shall lay down those Steps, whereby all Persons ought to proceed in a Matter of so much Difficulty: And in the first place, if your Horse be too fat, or over-much charged with Flesh, and therefore unfit for his Business, you shall, after Bleeding, give him the following Drench, which will work moderately, and no ways impair his Constitution; for in such Cases, all Physick of strong and violent Operation is to be avoided.

“ Take of the best *Sena* One Ounce, *Tamarinds* Three Ounces, *Rhubarb* cut into thin  
 “ Slices Two Ounces, *Pimento* and *Fennel-Seeds*  
 “ bruised, of each Half an Ounce; Salt of *Tartar* Two Drams: Let them be infused a whole  
 “ Day in a Quart or Three Pints of boiling  
 “ Water; and at Night pour off the Infusion,  
 “ or strain it through a Cloth, and add to it  
 “ Four Ounces of Syrup of *Roses*, or the  
 “ same Quantity of *Honey*, to be given early  
 “ next Morning.

During its Operation, your Horse is to be used, in all respects, as one under Physick of the greatest Efficacy, by giving him warm Water, scalded Bran, and Exercise; and it ought to



to be repeated as often as necessary. You may easily know when it has the desired Effect, because the Horse will be more brisk and hearty after it than before, and undertake every Action with more Courage and Spirit. When he has been in this Manner gently purged two or three times, it will be necessary to rest him a day or two; but at the same time when he rests, to abridge him somewhat of his usual Allowance. After this, you are to begin again to give him Exercise, at what time his Allowance of Provender may be enlarged; for no Horse can labour without sufficient Sustenance; and while he has constant Exercise, he will by no means grow over-fat, but his Flesh will become firm and durable.

His Exercise must at first be as gentle as possible, but yet there is no such Danger after moderate Evacuation as before; for it is a vulgar Error, and contrary to all Reason, that a Horse should be rid thoroughly before Evacuations, in order to prepare the Humours. This is so far from being of Service, that it is oftentimes very hazardous; for a foul Horse is not able to ride to any Degree without endangering his Wind, or some other Accident befalling him; the Reason of which has been given in the 7th Chapter, to which the Reader may have Recourse: But even after Evacuations are made, it should be moderate. And there is a much greater Regard to be had, as to the Manner of Exercise, with respect to some Horses, than others. And what makes this Point the more difficult is, because the same Signs that most denote the Want of Exercise, do always forbid an Excess.



All Horses when foul and foggy, especially those newly taken from Grass, fall a sweating as soon as you begin to move them; and some will even sweat while they stand in the Stable. Now Exercise is the only rational Method can be taken to cure this Infirmary, and yet no Horses in the World are so unable to bear it; wherefore as long as we perceive those Signs in any Horse, we are to have him constantly rid every Day more or less, especially after Evacuations of Bleeding and Purging; and the Exercise may be increased; or a Horse may be put to harder Exercise, as these Symptoms abate: And all this while his Food ought to be pretty liberal, especially his Provender; but while there is such a Disposition to sweat, it ought to be given often, tho' but little at a time. His Hay should be the cleanest, and that which has a sweet Flavour. But he may oftentimes stand before an empty Rack, in regard that Hay is apt to cause Fogginess; and the Food which induces a contrary Habit, is that which affords the most solid Nourishment, and at the same time does not overmuch stretch the Stomach and other Vessels. For all Fogginess, so far as the Cause is in the Animal itself, proceeds from an over-great Relaxation of the Canals and Vessels: Which Relaxation is caused by Plenty of viscid Blood, and that originally proceeds from raw and undigested Food, such as latter Grass, bad or ill-got Hay or Corn; but especially where there is also the Want of Exercise.

But as an over-great Relaxation of the Vessels is that which renders a Horse unable to go thro' Fatigue, notwithstanding he may be, to outward Appearance, in good Case: Therefore



fore if we endeavour to harden a Horse for a Match, or any other important Service, our Business is to bring them under such Management, as will induce a contrary Habit; that is, we are to fall upon such Measures, as will give a Tenseness and Spring to all the Vessels. And this is truly the State of Body a Horse ought to be in for a Racing; that is, his Flesh should be firm, and his Muscles hard. It is that which gives him a good Wind; and it is such a Habit only as can enable him to go thro' his Work. For when the Vessels are relaxed, as soon as the Blood is put into a more than ordinary Motion, it stagnates in all the extreme Parts, where they are the smallest, and stretches them beyond their ordinary Dimensions, as has been often observed, for want of that Force which ought to be in the Vessels to resist its Impulse: And because the perspirable Matter is detain'd by the extraordinary Pressure of the Vessels upon one another, there follows a Plenitude and Fullness, which is accompany'd with a Heaviness and Inactivity, while a great deal of the Matter which should be thrown off by insensible Transpiration, is evacuated by the Glands of the Skin; and this is the more immediate Cause of that Sweating, so usual to Horses that are foul and foggy.

Now as the right Way to cure all such Infirmities is by proper Food, duly administer'd, and by Exercise given seasonably and at proper Times; so the Method is to feed, as has been directed, by small Portions or Quantities, tho' often, and to begin your Exercise by raking or walking, so long as the Propensity to sweat continues; but when your Horse grows more hardy, you may gallop moderately, raking him  
out-



outwards till you arrive at your appointed Place, which should be smooth and not rugged, if possible, and where there is a moderate Ascent, for that will never hurt any Horse so much as riding downwards, or upon a Level. But the Custom of some, who to give their Horses a good Wind, begin their Airings by riding up steep Grounds, is most abominable; and indeed nothing can more endanger the absolute Breaking of their Wind, unless they have been very long accustom'd to the most severe Exercises, and are also in an uncommon good State of Body. The galloping up Hill may, no doubt, be of some Service to a Horse's Wind, after he has been used to it; and that, as sometimes happens, it is become so familiar, that it hardly breathes him, but by very long Continuance, or when put out to great Speed: Then you may indeed venture to gallop up Hill to promote the Discharges of the Lungs, which is all that is meant by breathing. But this ought at all times to be gone about with the greatest Discretion imaginable, lest Forcing the Blood, in an over-great Quantity, into the small Vessels of the Lungs and neighbouring Parts, it cause Chest-foundring; which Accident may happen to a Horse in his best Estate, if he be gallop'd up hill before his Body is prepared for it.

Cautions  
to be ob-  
served in  
Exercise.

If you observe your Horse labour and work heavily under you in any Kind of Exercise, you ought immediately to forbear. If he breathe hard, and work at his Flanks and Nostrils, or if he fall a wheezing after you have gallop'd him some time, it is a Sign he continues purfivè, and must therefore be sparingly used, notwithstanding he may be both ready and willing: But if he sweat  
unmer-



unmercifully in the Beginning of his Exercise, that Horse must either be of a weak or infirm Constitution, or else he continues extremely foggy. When it proceeds from the first, if at all, is not be cured without a considerable Length of Time; and if he be foggy, he ought only to be raked or gallop'd in the gentlest manner, until those Symptoms wear off: But when once you find him go thro' his Exercise with Vigor and Alacrity, and that none of those Symptoms appear, you may conclude him then brought into good Order, and it will be full time to begin giving him his Heats.

As to those Horses that are lean and out of Flesh, you are, in the first place, to raise them up by giving them Ease and Food, with abundance of good Dressing; and as we do not suppose a Horse, for such a Purpose, any ways diseased, there will be no Occasion for making Evacuations, as in those who are of a contrary State of Body. But because all those Things may be of Service which strengthen the Wind of a Horse, therefore both the one and the other may have now and then one of *Markham's* Pectoral Balls administer'd to them, or any other good Pectoral, which, when given to running Horses, are commonly term'd Scourings: Or the following may be administer'd once or twice, or oftner; it being very proper not only to strengthen a Horse's Wind, but to cleanse his Reins, and promote Urine.

*Take Canary or Malaga, One Pint; the clearest Rosin, in Powder, One Ounce: Mix them together over a gentle Heat, and add Half a Pint of the sweetest Oil Olive; and give it in the Morning, an Hour or two before you carry him abroad, and let his*



*his Water be made warm, in the same manner as if he had taken a Purge.*

This Scouring is very much in Use, and is said to bring away *Molten Grease*; but its most manifest Effects are those I have ascribed to it; upon which Account it must, no doubt, be of Service, excepting when it is exhibited too often, as happens sometimes by those, who always think they do best, when they overdo: In that Case, the Oil being often repeated, so relaxes the Stomach and Guts of a Horse, that he will scour in good earnest, even until the *Chyle*, which is his Nourishment, comes along with his Dung. And this is often taken by ignorant Persons for *Molten Grease*; but when such Things are given with Discretion, they prove serviceable to Horses in all Conditions.

If the Horse's Lowness proceeds from the Want of Food; as for Instance, when he has gone upon a bad Pasture, or run at Grass till late in the Year, it must require the longer Time to bring him in Condition; and his Exercise must be very moderate, because a Horse in that State has, for the most part, his Blood gross and viscid: But if it proceeds only from Riding, as sometimes happens to such Horses when they are made to hunt or travel, you need only increase their Food: But it would be a manifest Injury to break off their Habit of Exercise, excepting only that they should not be suffer'd to leap or ride up Hill and down, or put to any other Kind of Labour that might expose them to Accidents.

And thus when a Horse has only been somewhat harass'd with Labour, it is no difficult Matter to prepare him for a Match; but if his Lowness proceeds from the other Causes above-mention'd, inducing a Viscidity into the Blood,  
with



with a Pogginess, and an Indisposition to Exercise, such an one may be looked upon as in part diseased; and we often observe some of those Horses subject to Gourdiness and Swelling in their Legs; which does not, as People are apt to believe, proceed from Grease or any superfluous Matter, but the ill State of Body they are then under, by reason of that viscid Texture in their Blood, which causes it to stagnate in those Parts; and therefore if they be newly come from a foggy Grass, or have been used to any Kind of unwholesome Food, their first Diet must be as solutive and opening, as is consistent with a good OEconomy; that is, to be so order'd, as rather to increase than diminish Flesh: And at the same time you give a Horse, in this Condition, scalded Bran, or Mashies of Malt, you are also, at proper Intervals, to give him small Quantities of the cleanest and best Oats; and his Exercise should never be omitted. But he must every day, if the Weather permits, be walk'd or rid early in the Morning, and likewise in the Afternoon. This is not only the properest Method to give him a good Stomach, but to enable him also to digest and to strengthen him in all respects; and no other Method can be so serviceable in all Cases of Gourdiness or Swelling in the Legs; for by following it, you may by degrees bring him wholly to the most nourishing Diet without the least Hazard of over-heating him, or causing any other Accident whatsoever. And moreover, he will in time be also enabled to go thro' those preparatory Exercises that are necessary to Running, whereof you are in all Cases to judge by these Signs, which have been already laid down, *viz.*  
from



The Signs  
of a Hor-  
se's being  
brought  
into good  
Order.

from the Horse's Action and Performances, and likewise from his Dung and other Excretions.

The Dung of a Horse that is in good Order, is always somewhat more inclinable to be dry than moist; it is free from all Manner of Slime and Viscidity: And when it is well digested, it is also free from gross Stalks, either of Hay or Straw; neither is there any Number of whole Grains of Corn to be found in it; for these are chiefly perceivable when a Horse happens to be surfeited, or when the Fibres of the Stomach are so much relaxed, that it cannot thoroughly perform its Office; but when the Dung is brittle, smooth, and of good Consistency, it is always a Sign that the Horse is in right Order.

There are also Signs taken from the Sweat; but the best of all is, when as little of that appears as may be. Yet hard Riding, such as the Heats before a Race, will make any Horse sweat: But it is always a good Sign when it is thin and clear, not changing the Colour of the Horse; for when it is frothy, like a Lather, it more or less denotes a viscid gross Blood: For that is a Property in almost all Liquids of a viscid Contexture, that they thicken into Froth by Heat and Motion.

The Horse's whole Body should be firm to the Touch, and appear to the Eye nervous and sinewy: The Eye should be quick and lively: The Stones of a Stone-Horse not hanging low, but pursed up as much as can be: His Hair or Coat should lie smooth and even; and his Limbs should be nervous, clean and free from Swellings.

A Horse in this Condition may, no doubt, have his preparatory Heats without Danger: Concerning which I need lay down no particular Directions, but shall only take notice, that  
when



when a Horse is carefully walked out and back again, and when he is not worked beyond his Strength and Ability, nothing conduces so much to bring him into perfect Wind, and to endure the severest of all Exercise. It is this, after his Body is rightly prepared, that enables him to go through his Career: And unless a Horse was thus habituated from the gentlest Gallop to the highest Speed, by preparatory Exercises, he would soon flag, let the State of his Body be never so good.

Most Persons heat their Horses twice a Week if the Weather be favourable; and this they do during the last Month of Dieting: But because this Space of Time is short enough to render a Horse durable in so severe an Exercise, it can never be amiss to keep Horses that are appointed for Running, at all Times more or less, in the Habit of Galloping on such Grounds where they may be as little as possible exposed to Accidents. And if this Method be comply'd with, the Preparation for a Match would not be tedious, but very easy: And those Horses who are discreetly managed in this respect, might be the most certainly depended on, provided they have also the other Properties required in Race Horses.

The Food of Running Horses ought to be the cleanest Oats, and the best got; and what Hay they are permitted to eat, should also be sweet, and carefully purged from all Dust, and other Foreign Matter. The last Six Weeks their Diet consists chiefly of Bread, because that is of more light and easy Digestion than the Grain, when well baked and kept till it be stale; but nothing in the World is more surfeiting than new Bread, and more apt to render a Horse foggy.

The particular Food of Running Horses.



gy. The first Fortnight's Bread is made of two Parts Beans, and one of Wheat; the second of equal Parts; and the last, three Parts Wheat, and one of Beans: And there are some who grind Barley with their first Bread. The Bread when stale is cut into Shaves or Slices, chipp'd and pared, and then crumbled among the Horse's other Provender, which consists both of Beans and Oats; and it is, for the most part, given at Discretion; though the usual Method is to crumble two or three Shaves into a Quart of the other Provender, and some steep in Muscadine, or relax it in the Whites of Eggs. There are some also, who to assist their Wind, give them the Yolks of new laid Eggs, several Times during their Diet: But all Persons are not agreed in those Things; for my own part, it is my Opinion, and what I am pretty well assured of, that although there is a great deal in the Nature of the Diet, yet the main Thing is in the right administering thereof: But above all, seasonable Exercise join'd to it, is that which truly does the Business.

*Dressing.*

The keeping of a Running Horse always well dress'd, is likewise a great Benefit; for nothing makes him so sprightly and fit for his Business: Besides that Dressing is absolutely necessary, and cannot be omitted without Hazard, because of their Heats; and therefore they are rubbed in the Field and rubbed in the Stable. The Keeper should be watchful, and visit such Horses early and late; and take them out in the Morning, as soon as the Sun appears; and sometimes sooner, because nothing creates so keen an Appetite as the Morning Air; and nothing so much strengthens and corroborates the whole Body.

In



In all Airings the main Point lies in this, to walk out gently, increase a Horse's Labour by Degrees, and not to stop often of a sudden, but let it also fall gradually; to observe always how much he is able to bear: And a discreet Person will never be ty'd too precisely to any Rule or Custom however prevalent, but administer both Food and Exercise, as he shall see most convenient.

The Horse should be inured to all Things that tend to Cleanliness and Decency; and for that purpose, his Rider should let him smell at Horse-Dung, to encourage him to stale upon any rising soft Ground; or where there is Water; and especially before he is brought into the Stable, that he may not piss among his own Litter.

And lastly, his Heats should always, if possible, be made on the same Ground he is to run upon, that he may be fully acquainted therewith. But all those Things are so well known, that we need not insist farther upon them.

## C H A P. XII.

### *Of Horses at Grass, &c.*

**T**HE Virtues of Grass being already taken Notice of, where we have treated of the Food of Horses, our present Business shall chiefly be to lay down some Directions concerning that Manner of Feeding, with an Account of all such Temperaments and Habits as require Grass or Soil. But for Order sake, we

N shall



shall put the Reader in mind, that as the Grass is different according to the several Soils out of which it springs, so its Virtues are also different: And some, as has been already declared, is chiefly Cleansing and Scouring; especially when Horses are first turn'd out; for afterwards when their Bodies come to be habituated to it, and their first Desires are satiated, that they eat more moderately of it, it ceases to have that Effect. This kind of Grass purges at first, by reason it abounds with many Alteratives, which are chiefly of the Antiscorbutick Kind; and it commonly grows near large Rivers, or in Places where there is much Moisture.

Clover, and all Grass that grows on the richest Soil, chiefly fattens; and that Kind of Grass which grows on or near Rocky Grounds may not improbably be both Cordial and Restorative in its Effects, from the Abundance of Herbs which grow in those Places that are endow'd with Cordial and Restorative Qualities: But all Grass, of whatsoever Kind, as it is saturated with the *Nitre* of the Earth, has this one Quality added to it, that it is cooling and Diuretick in its Effects: And therefore nothing can be more serviceable in the proper Season.

But there are divers Circumstances which may forbid the Use of Grass. As for Instance, when a Horse happens to be very old; for then the Grass is of too cold a Nature, while he requires more warm and generous Nourishment. Some are also of Opinion, that Grass is hurtful to Horses that are *mangey*, or have any other Eruptions upon their Skin; but especially when they lie under the *Farcin*: Indeed when the *Farcin* has been of an old standing, and has  
made

Cases  
wherein  
Grass is  
prejudi-  
cial.



made Impressions upon the Skin, so as to break and destroy its Texture, he must then, no doubt, require something of more powerful Efficacy; and, for the most part, Recourse must be had to *Cinnabar*, *Antimonial*, and *Mercurial* Preparations; and to other Things of the Mineral Kind, besides outward Applications, which are no less necessary; but in a Beginning of *Farcin*, before the Texture of the Skin has been much injured; as also in the Mange, when it happens not to be of long Standing, that sort of Grass may be serviceable which scours; especially as it oftentimes abounds with Antiscorbutick Herbs: But in all Cases of Manginess, there ought also to be used proper Applications outwardly.

Horses that are any ways Faulty in their Wind, but especially if that proceeds from an inward Waste and Decay, are not to be turn'd to Grass, unless it be in the Beginning of Summer, when it is in greatest Strength and Perfection; neither should they be continued any Time at it, otherwise it will increase their Disorders: At first it may be of use to cool and keep off Heaviness: And if the Grass be of that sort which scours, it must be so much the more proper, because it will also invigorate their Blood; but if it be a rank Grass, it will render them more purfivè than before they were turn'd out. If a purfivè or broken-winded Horse was to be continued long in any Kind of Pasture, it ought to be such as abounds most with Restoratives, where all the Grass participates of the same Virtues with those Herbs, because it derives its Nourishment from the same Source. But the Reader may consult the 6th Chapter.



The Grass  
proper for  
most  
young  
Horses.

Those Horses which require most to go at Grass are, in the first place, such as are young: Grass is the first Nourishment of all Colts after they are wean'd; and even the Milk is originally form'd and generated of it, as the Dams commonly go at Grass all the Time they give Suck; and therefore it must, no doubt, be the natural Food of all young Horses, especially in the Season. Young Animals require those Things that are not of the strongest Nourishment, but such as will fill their Stomach, and consequently all the Vessels, in order to their Accretion and Growth; for by that means, they grow to their full Stature: Whereas when they are fed with Corn and Hay, but especially with the first, as is necessary to Horses of Service and Fatigue, it exposes them to unspeakable Injuries, as shall be more fully shewn hereafter.

For such  
as have  
lain under  
lingring  
Distem-  
pers.

Grass is also very proper for Horses, that have lain under some lingring Indispositions, where there is no visible Waste or Decay: As for Instance, those Horses which eat heartily but do not thrive upon it, Scouring at Grass oftentimes recovers such Horses to a perfect State of Health, insomuch that when they are taken up, they look plump, fat and beautiful.

For those  
subject to  
Costive-  
ness and  
inward  
Heat, &c.

It is no less proper for those subject to Costiveness and inward Heat, especially that which scours and cleanses most, &c. For all those Horses that are surbated, or have their Hoofs dry and brittle, the Softness of the Ground, the Moisture and refreshing Coolness of the Grass renders their Hoofs more tough and durable; especially as that Kind of Food also derives a more diffusive Moisture into all Parts. And sometimes nothing proves of more  
Ser-



Service to Horses in some Lamenesses; especially in their Shoulders and Hips; but this proceeds not so much from the Quality of Grass, as that Horses in such a Condition are kept from all Labour that is violent; and yet as they are continually moving in the open Air, it helps those Obstructions that they wear off gradually. The Grass is also profitable to Horses that are harrafs'd and lean after a long Journey, or any excessive Labour; as it not only cools and refreshes their Bodies, but proves a Time of Respite and Rest, whereby they not only recover their Flesh but their Stiffness.

But there is no Case whatsoever wherein the Grass is more serviceable than to Horses that have been long troubled with Gourdi-  
ness. Swellings in their Legs and Pasterns. And it proves beneficial to such Horses in the Sense above-mention'd, viz. Not from any peculiar Efficacy or immediate Virtue in the Grass to abate and wear off such Swellings, but the Horse being at his full Liberty, walks or lays himself down at his Pleasure; so that those Obstructions which could not be removed by any Application whatsoever, wear off by length of Time, and the Horses Legs return to their natural Dimensions.

There is indeed this Benefit from the Grass, that there is nothing in it, as in other Food, that will over-much heat the Body: And if a Horse be surfeited, as happens sometimes when they are first turn'd out, by their feeding too greedily; there is however this Advantage, that all such Surfeits commonly work themselves off without Hazard: Whereas when a Horse happens to be surfeited with Corn, it is, for the most part, very obstinate, and discom-



poses the whole OEconomy; and the Horse must certainly suffer the more, where there is any previous Indisposition; and if he be subject to Gourdiuess and Swellings in his Legs, every Error in Diet will increase such Maladies.

But Corn, even when it does not surfeit, yet unless it be given with the greatest Circumspection imaginable, it may be injurious to young Horses under those Maladies, by reason that it affords too much Nourishment, unless when they are put to daily Exercise; and because few are competent Judges in those Matters, there are many Horses ruined for want of proper Management: But I would advise any one when his Horse's Legs are monstrously furred and swell'd, and that they resist all Remedies, to turn them out immediately, whether it be Summer or Winter. If the Horse be otherwise sound, ten to one but he will recover: And I believe those who have been Masters of many Horses must be sensible of this in some Instances. And I have known those which were turn'd out as uselefs, and have not been thought worth keeping, recover to Admiration, and very much to the Satisfaction and Surprize of the Owner.

When a Horse's Legs have been swell'd for some considerable Time, the Obstructions become so great, that even the very Coats of the Vessels themselves are thicken'd to such a Degree, that the Capacity within them is in a manner quite shut up; and the Pressure that those make one upon another, when thus dilated, obstructs all the Pores; so that there is little or no room left for the Passage of the perspirable Matter; but the whole Substance of  
the



the Part becomes like a *Wen*, or any other foreign Growth; and it is no Wonder therefore if it resist all manner of Applications: But as there is this Difference between the Swelling of the Legs, and those foreign Substances, that it is more uniform and equal, and the Vessels kept pretty much in their due Position; so there is still a Possibility of recovering the Part; and nothing can contribute so much thereunto, as a continued easy Motion, and one constant Tenure in Feeding.

When a Horse in this Condition is kept within Doors, there is no great Hopes of his Recovery, not only because the Nature of his Food makes little towards it, but because he cannot be fed so regularly as such a Case may require. If he stands altogether in the Stable, it ruins him quite; if he be carry'd Abroad, the Changes from Dry to Wet, and from Heat to Cold, and from thence again to a warm Stable, proves also injurious to him. Exercise is necessary and absolutely useful, but if it be too violent, it is no less hurtful; so there is no Remedy so certain as to give a Horse free Liberty in the open Fields, where he will altogether follow the Dictates of his own Instinct. He must be constantly in Motion to find out his proper Food; and yet he will move no longer than while he finds himself easy, but will forthwith lay himself down to rest. And there is this Benefit also Abroad from what is within Doors, that when his Legs are so stiff that he cannot lay himself down in a Stable, in the Field he will choose a rising Ground, and lay his Back and Shoulders against it, until the Swelling so much abates, that he is able to lie upon a Level. And albeit his Food be of



a more viscid Nature than what he eats within Doors; yet as there is nothing in it that ever heats him, and puts his Blood into a more violent Hurry at one Time than another, it does not any ways incommode him: So that by all those Helps, the obstructed Matter runs off by Degrees; and as the Weight and Incumbrance lessens, he becomes more active; which as his Action is also gradual, and not hurry'd or forced, so his Legs and Pasterns recover their natural Tone and Vigor.

And this is the true Reason why running Abroad becomes so serviceable to Horses in such a Condition; and the only Danger they are obnoxious to, is upon their first going out; which, if it be in Winter, they are exposed to Colds from the Moisture of the Air, and by lying upon the damp wet Ground; and in Summer they are render'd at first obnoxious to the *Stagers*, by reason of their intense and plentiful Feeding with their Heads downwards: And therefore it will be proper for all Horses that are turn'd to Grass in Summer upon any Account, to be taken up and bled in the Cool of the Morning, after Two or Three Days, and kept under a Shade, or in some cool Place, till the Cool of the Evening: And in Winter to turn them into Grounds where there are Hovels or Shades for Shelter, especially at first; and likewise to supply them not only with Hay, but with Plenty of Litter, which ought to be sometimes renew'd until they are perfectly habituated to the Weather.

Nor must there be less Care taken at the Time of their Return from Grass, lest they relapse and fall back into the same Disorders, or into others that may be of as ill Consequence.

Hor-



Horses are subject to divers Infirmities after Grass; but these are chiefly owing to the Want of proper Management. Some Persons let them run too long, even until the Grass has no manner of Heart or Nourishment; and sometimes they are continued Abroad till the Falling of the latter Rains, which is the worst Time of all to take them up. The Grass is but a loose Nourishment at any Time, if compared with hard Feeding; and it is impossible but a Horse's Body must be very foggy in the latter Season of the Year: So that upon the Change of Air and Diet he must be exposed to Surfeits, which lay the Foundation of many other Indispositions. But young Horses, as their Appetites are vigorous and strong, are, after the Grass, especially when they are kept late Abroad, subject to Gourdiness; and the Foundation of those Swellings in the Legs oftentimes takes Date and Origin from hence; which might, perhaps, be prevented, if they were brought in sooner; for then the Weather being warmer, their Bodies would be much more easily habituated to warm and close keeping; and as they cannot be supposed at that Time so foggy, as when they are Abroad later, so they may be more easily habituated to the Change of Diet.

The right Way therefore to prevent the *Farcin*, *Mange*, *Gourdiness*, and all the other Accidents that happen after Grass, is to take up your Horses before the Weather is much alter'd, and before the Grass loses its Strength: For Horses had much better run Abroad all Winter, than be taken up late in the Year: But if any Thing happens that may hinder them being taken up at a proper Season, the Order of managing them ought to be in this Sort. In the first



first place, they should not be put into a Stable that is over close, and where the Air is shut out; neither should they at first have too much Dressing, nor be cloathed; because that would be apt to open the Pores too soon, and expose them to catching Cold. The first Cloathing should be only a single Sheet, which may be continued till the Weather grows more piercing and cold; and then one of *Kersey* may be made use of. Their first Food ought rather to be new Hay than old, because it approaches the nearest to Grass; but they should be sometimes suffer'd to stand before an empty Rack, otherwise they will be apt to glut themselves: And you may bring them by Degrees to old Hay, by mixing new and old together, or by giving old and new by Turns. Their Food, for the first Week, ought to be altogether Hay; and before you proceed to give Corn, you are to administer wet Bran, and whatever else will keep them soluble and open, and, at the same time, afford but moderate Nourishment. Their Corn at first should be given but by Handfuls, and not above a Quart a Day, increasing by Degrees. And because while a Horse is at Grass he is constantly in the Air, and used to Exercise; therefore he ought, upon his taking up, be rid out gently every Day once, or oftner; for nothing in the Universe will contribute so much to prevent Swelling in the Legs and Pasterns.

But notwithstanding these Rules will appear the most Rational to any one who is acquainted with the true *Mechanism* of a Horse, yet the Keeper ought carefully to examine constantly into the State of his Body, there being no Rule so certain which may not admitt of Exceptions, especially in what relates to the Animal Body,  
which



which is the most liable of all other Things to change ; and therefore, if a Horse be faint and out of Heart upon a low Diet, though such a Diet is, for the most part, necessary under the above-mention'd Circumstances, it ought then to be somewhat increased ; but if, with the Increase of Diet, his Legs swell, or any other such Accident appears, his Exercise must then also be increased to harden him, and keep his Legs in Order. And as this commonly falls out to young Horses, or such as are of an infirm, weakly Constitution, the Aids of Physick may also be called in, especially *Antimony*, and its Preparations, or the native *Cinnabar*, or some other *Alterative*, which is capable to attenuate the Blood and promote Perspiration ; and in Case of Costiveness, which very often happens upon a Change of Diet after Grass, nothing is so proper as Clysters of Fat Broth, Whey, or those made of the Decoctions of emollient Herbs, with an Addition of Oil to make them sufficiently laxative : For all purging Medicines given under any other Form, besides that of Clyster or Suppository, may be prejudicial to Horses whose Blood is viscid, and whose whole Disposition is foggy. As to foiling, or giving Horses cut Grass, it is very proper in the Summer to young Stone Horses, where there is not the Conveniency of turning them out. See the latter End of the following Chapter.





## C H A P. XIII.

*Concerning the Diet and Exercise of Troop-Horses.*

**T**H E R E are no Horses more exposed to Accidents, than those made use of in the Service of the Army ; for as they are chiefly of that Kind, which are ordained for Draught and Labour, so it is not an easy Matter to habituate them to other Employments. Riding is prejudicial to many of them, because of their extraordinary Size and Weight, and standing much in the Stable is no less hurtful to them on the same Account, insomuch that it is with Difficulty they can be preserved from surbating and other Accidents in their Feet ; besides that by reason their Bodies are very gross, when they are not kept to constant Labour, they are apt to turn otherwise diseased, and become much more subject to Imperfections in their Wind, to Distempers in their Eyes, and to Gourdiness and Swellings in their Legs, than any other Horses whatever.

It has been observed in a preceding Chapter, that Drawing requires chiefly Strength ; and as is is an Exercise which is of one equal Tenor, and cannot be hurried, and as the most laborious Part chiefly lies on Horses that are fully season'd to it ; so those Kind of Horses last many Years in Labour, without any the least Infirmary : But when once they are regimented and marshal'd into Troops, they are oftentimes obliged to ride, carrying a considerable Weight,  
and



and to go through Exercises of the Manage; which although many of them take to those Exercises with Abundance of Ease and Pleasure, yet the far greater Number being of a froward and stubborn Disposition, undergo the severest Discipline, before they can be brought to any Thing: And even such as are the most free and docible, when they are either of tender Constitutions, or very Young, will be apt to suffer while they are taught those Lessons: Besides that War-Houses are oftentimes exposed to Marches and Encampments; and (sometimes, when the Weather is the least favourable) which also proves very injurious to them, until they be thoroughly season'd and inured to such Hardships: Sometimes they are also exposed to Accidents, by falling into the Hands of Persons who are careless, or altogether unacquainted with Horses, which must unavoidably happen; since all who are lifted into the Service cannot be expected to have those Qualifications that are necessary in a Horseman; for it is not the bare Feeding and Dressing, according to the common Method, that is sufficient for the Preservation of such Horses; but it equally consists in the careful Riding, and good Usage in all other respects.

In order to preserve our Troops in a good and serviceable Condition, a great deal depends upon the Choice of right Horses at first. But concerning this, there needs be no Directions given, since there is to be met with in every Branch of that Service, Persons sufficiently versed therein: And therefore, if I mention any Thing, which may more immediately fall within the Province of those Gentlemen, it is only for Order's sake, as it happens to be inseparably



parably connected with my Subject, and not from any Desire I have to fall upon such Points as are better known to others.

The Qualifications necessary in a Troop Horse.

It has been already observed from the *Sieur de Solleysell*, that Beauty and Goodness are almost inseparable Qualities in a Horse; and indeed it frequently falls out according to that Gentleman's Observation; but among none more than those of the black heavy Breed; for when they are short and well-coupled, have their Head and Neck fine, their Shoulders somewhat thin, their Legs nervous and strong, and yet not charged with Flesh; they are not only the most beautiful, but, generally speaking, the most hardy, and by their Make the least exposed to Accidents.

The next Thing to be regarded, after the outward Shape and Configuration, is, whether a Horse be sound; which, notwithstanding all the usual Signs, he ought, no doubt, to be judged by making some Trial of him; for a Horse may be diseased, or at least of a weakly Constitution, albeit he has all the Appearances of Strength and Soundness.

The Age is also very much to be regarded, and that upon many Accounts; because if a Horse be young, it is not likely that he should have imbibed ill Habits, and therefore he must undoubtedly be the more easily brought to the Manage, and to all his other Business; besides that he will probably yield much more Service: Tho' a great deal of Care must, no doubt, be taken of all young Horses; for then they are in most Danger as to their Health, being, as has been frequently observed, much more obnoxious to Accidents than when they are arrived to their full Growth.

Those



Those which are bought of the Breeder, or out of Country Teams, are usually the most to be depended on, as they are seldom put to any Kind of Labour besides drawing in the Plough, or some light Carriage, while in their Hands; which is so far from hurting them, that it assists their Growth, and renders them more strong and vigorous than otherwise they would be. But I should not think it advisable to refuse a Horse that promises well from other Hands, even tho' it was from a Jockey: And, considering the vast Time required to make a good serviceable Troop, and the Difficulty to keep it in good Condition, methinks one ought not to be too scrupulous in taking in sometimes Horses that are full aged, provided they are perfectly sound; for there are some such to be met with, that will yield as much real Service, as others which are younger. The only Difficulty is to bring those Horses to their Business: But yet they will endure Fatigue, and look well upon a moderate Diet, which is a great Advantage; and if their Service chance to be but short, their Price is commonly but small. A Man however had need know the Person from whom he buys a full-aged Horse, or be somewhat acquainted with his past Services; for it is hazardous to buy such an one from a Stranger, or a Jockey; for a full-aged Horse being arrived to his perfect Stature, and being full spread, he will look extraordinary well to the Eye; especially when he has been dress'd and carefully fed up for the Market, notwithstanding he may have some hid Imperfection: And there are Abundance of such Horses to be met with, after



ter they have been cast out of Gentlemens Coaches, and sometimes out of Troops.

When Horses happen to be full-aged, it is not so easy to committ any Error in their Feeding ; because they are not so apt to surfeit themselves, neither are they easily injured by their Labour, unless they happen to meet with very ill Usage ; nor will they suffer so much as younger Horses from the Want of regular Dressing ; and therefore such Horses might be more safely intrusted into the Hands of such Persons as have not been long in the Horse or Dragoon Service, or have been but little acquainted with the keeping of Horses. But young Horses ought to be intrusted with those who have been altogether used among Horses ; and such as are froward and stubborn, with those who are the best Horsemen, and the most careful.

How Horses bought from Jockeys ought to be managed.

A Horse that comes out of a Jockey's Hands ought to be very gently used in the Beginning ; because their Way of Feeding enables a Horse to go through no manner of Fatigue, but on the contrary, renders him obnoxious to Abundance of Accidents, especially if he be rid hard ; and therefore, such an one ought to be only walked out gently ; and while they endeavour to make their Horses fat and full belly'd, they keep them from all manner of Exercise : In order therefore to induce a contrary Habit, they should have more or less Exercise every Day, until their Bodies are harden'd and strengthned. But these Horses ought not to be put to the Riding-School, nor sent upon any March or Expedition, until they are thoroughly proved ; for they oftentimes come as foggy out of the Jockey's Hands, as when they are taken up



up from the latter Grass, and require the same manner of Treatment.

Those young Horses which are taken from the Team, are no less carefully to be managed in Point of Diet and Exercise; tho' many of them are not so foggy as those we have been taking Notice of; yet as they are, for the most part, not arrived to their full Strength and Vigor, and as they have been unaccustomed to the Saddle, and likewise to standing, they should be walked out, or rid out every Day twice, when the Weather is favourable, that they may have both Air and Exercise; for when it is otherwise, that they are shut up into a close Stable, and have no other Airing but just to Water, and back again; and have also plentiful Feeding of Hay and Corn, though they, perhaps, do not lose much of their Flesh, yet they often decline in Point of Beauty; and with that also in their Constitution; they lose that Sleekness they had while they were at Labour, notwithstanding they have more Dressing bestowed upon them, and are apt to be surfeited, and afterwards to fall into divers Infirmities; which is plainly from the abrupt breaking off a Habit from Labour to Ease, and from being taken out of the Air, whereunto they had been accustomed. Such Horses are also apt to be diseased in their Feet, and to have their Legs swell, if it be in Winter. All which Accidents are only to be prevented by moderate Feeding, and daily Exercise, discreetly given, until a Horse becomes habituated by Degrees to less Labour.

But there is nothing tends more to the Advantage of our Troops, than the Exercise of the Riding-School, when used with Judgment. But



when it is otherwise, that those heavy Horses are either compel'd to Lessons that are only fit for those of a more Active and nimble Breed; or if they are not in a good State of Body, and somewhat prepared before-hand, they may easily be injured; and, no doubt, for want of this Consideration, many good Horses become Chest-Founder'd, have their Grease molten, or their Wind broke, or become Lamé; for putting Horses into the Manage, while their Bodies are foul and unprepared, or while they are too young, and their Joints relaxed; or at least if they be brought under any Kind of severe Discipline, as the Horses we are now speaking of are of the largest Size, and the least able to bear what is violent; so they must, no doubt, be expos'd to all the Accidents and Infirmities to which Horses are obnoxious.

What  
Cautions  
are neces-  
sary be-  
fore they  
be taught  
in the  
Riding-  
School.

And therefore Horses newly come out of the Team, the Jockey's Hand, or from Grass; or if not, for some time past, accustomed to the Saddle, should first of all be us'd to riding along the Road, and their Bodies thereby somewhat harden'd before they be put to ride their Rounds in the School; after which the Riding-Master may discipline them according to his Discretion, which, however, ought with those Kind of Horses never to be over violent. There are some among them who will attain every Lesson with as much Ease and Docility as any other Horses whatever; and when they are taught, make a very noble Appearance; but there are others who can hardly be made to go through the plainest Lessons; and there are some so stubborn that they can be brought to nothing. It would certainly be very agreeable to see a Troop all of managed Horses; but  
since



since it is impossible to meet with many Horses that are capable of being taught the half of what is usual in those Exercises: And moreover, since it is equally impossible to make all their Riders good Horsemen, notwithstanding they have their Reason to assist them; it would therefore be the better Way for the Preservation of the Horses, not to urge them too much in Things whereunto they have no Disposition naturally, but to bit them exactly; and when their Mouths are made, any of them may in Company be brought to go through their necessary Evolutions: And if their Shoulders can be but once suppled, and the Use of the School grow somewhat familiar to them, a plain and easy Exercise round a Circle on a Sandy Floor, once a Day, will tend greatly to their Preservation in Health.

When Troop Horses are under the Discipline of the Riding-Master; or when they only go to School to be kept in the Use of what has been already taught them, their Allowance of Corn and Hay, should, no doubt, be somewhat more liberal than when they stand much in the Stable; and it is certainly very proper that they should be quarter'd in Towns, which lie near dry Commons, that they may have sufficient Room for Airing, and likewise for Discipline, and where there is good Water for them to drink: Large open Fields, or good Commons, are very necessary for them to be walked or gently rid upon for an Hour or more in the Morning, and as much in the Afternoon, when they have no other Exercise. Under this Kind of Management they will, undoubtedly, last many Years, and be fit, at all Times, for any Expedition.



The Grass  
of great  
Benefit to  
Troop  
Horses.

But nothing conduces more to the Health and Preservation of Troop-Horses, than sending them to Grass in the Season. But it would be very proper to have their Marches so disposed, and their Quarters so settled, that they may be turn'd out as early as possible, before the Grass grows too long. This is an Inconveniency our Horse and Dragoons have sometimes lain under, when they have been commanded to march late in the Spring, that when they come to be turn'd into a Field where the Grass is long, as it is usual to send a great Number together into one Inclosure, they tread it down the Minute they are let loose, through mere Wantonness, and break all the Stems, that the whole Field, in two or three Days time, becomes like Stubble. But Horses should be sent Abroad while the Grass is short, and begins only to flower; for then it is in its full Strength, and will continue so by their continual cropping of it; neither can it be trod down while in that Condition; nor can the Grass suffer any other Injury while it is young, by a Number of Horses being turn'd out upon it; unless the Ground be very wet, so as to sink under their Feet, which is another Inconveniency should also be carefully avoided: And when there is a good Number of Horses to be sent together in this manner into one Field, the Weather, if possible, should always be dry. And there should likewise be other Fields to change them as often as one becomes bare; and the Dung, where there are a good many Horses, gather'd up once in three or four Days; otherwise they will be apt to nauseate, and expose themselves to Accidents, by breaking over Fences to get into other Fields.

There



There are other Particulars concerning the grazing of Troop-Horses, which are also very material, *viz.* That they have Plenty of good Water, sufficient Shelter from the excessive Heat of the Sun; that the Hedges and other Fences be close, and not full of sharp Stakes; that the Grounds be not exposed to Floods and Inundations; and that they be free from Quags and Quickfands; for all such Things expose Horses very much to Accidents, but especially those that are of a large Bulk and heavy.

It cannot be amiss, after they have been some few days Abroad, to take them up in the Cool of the Morning, and open a Vein, as has been directed in the preceding Chapter: And though I am no great Friend to Bleeding, yet it can never be amiss upon this Occasion; and there may be also some Circumstances which may require it upon their Return, especially those whose Legs are much disposed to Swelling and Gourdinels; or when they happen to be seized with Coughing, or when they are purfue, and labour at their Flanks, or when they are pained and turn suddenly lame in any particular Member. The Revulsion made by Blood-  
ing, may, no doubt, be a great Relief in all such Circumstances; but yet where there is only a Relaxation or Swelling in the Legs, or if the Horse in any other Case be of a lax Habit of Body, the Quantity taken from such an one ought to be but moderate, otherwise it may add to the Weakness of his Constitution; and there are but few who know the proper Method to repair such Accidents in Time.

But to avoid the common Mischances that happen to Horses newly taken up from Grass, the Directions already laid down ought to be



## The Dieting of Horses.

observed more carefully, with respect to Troop Horses, than to any other; *viz.* that they be brought home in due time. As those Horses are large for the most part, they must require more Food than such as are of a meaner Stature; and therefore if they be suffer'd to run Abroad late in the Year, when the Grass has lost its Strength, they must undoubtedly be deprived of a sufficient Quantity of Sustenance; and those that are young, and eat heartily, must certainly grow extremely foggy, and their Blood very viscid; besides that they are oftentimes ordered to change Quarters in the Beginning of Winter, which must, no doubt, be a very great Detriment to the Troops, if they be suffer'd to run at Grass till late of the Year. Troop-Horses should therefore not only be turned out early, that they may have the Grass in its full Strength and Vigor, but also be brought home betimes, that they may be season'd to hard Feeding, and their Bodies be brought into good Order before they travel. For although their Stages are but short, and their Marches such as cannot but very much conduce to the Benefit of our Troops, yet if they set off when their Bodies are foggy, and destitute of right Nourishment, some of them will suffer: Though those that are young, and naturally of good and hardy Constitutions, will be nothing the worse, if due Care be taken, but even mend upon travelling such short Stages.

Nothing is of greater Detriment to our Troops, than when they are obliged to march in great Bodies, as is usual upon some Expeditions; besides the Inconveniency of bad Stables, they are often crowded upon the Way, by  
rea-



reason of the frequent Stops in narrow Lanes, or Places where the Roads are bad, or full of Water, and the ascending steep Hills, which, while those in the Front move not beyond a Foot-pace, the Rear at the same time are forced to go at too violent a Rate; and therefore when our Troops are not under the Necessity of quick Marches, or of moving in large Bodies, but are only changing Quarters, the best way is, no doubt, to march Troop by Troop; but when it is otherwise, the Squadrons should march as distant from each other as consistent with the present Necessity, to avoid the Extremes of Riding too hard or too slow: The one fatigues and wastes a Horse's Spirits, renders him faint, exposes him wholly to the cold Air, if in Winter; and by making his Coat rough, spoils his outward Beauty: And the other Extreme, *viz.* hard Riding, exposes those large heavy Horses to Surfeits, Chest-Foundring, weakens their Eyes, and impairs their Wind.

No one who has had the least Acquaintance in the Horse-Service, but must be sensible that these are the Accidents whereunto Troop Horses are most obnoxious, together with Surbating, and other Infirmities of the Feet; and by reason many of them have their Legs and Pasterns very much charged with Flew (which cannot be avoided where there are so great a Number) they are therefore no less subject to swell in those Parts upon the least Error; and sometimes notwithstanding all the Care in the World, it is impossible to keep their Legs clean and in good Order.

And therefore to avoid those Accidents, which are indeed the worst that can happen, and may easily be attended with a Number of other In-



The Management of Troop Horses after Grass, firmities, their Exercise should, after Grass, or at any Time when they have stood much, be no other than brisk Walking, sometimes rising to a gentle Trot; and they should be advanced no farther until their Bodies are by Degrees season'd to Labour. As for those Horses that are subject to Swellings in their Legs and Pasterns, if they be old and naturally fleshy in those Parts, they are fit for no other Service but to draw in the Plow, or in a Country-Team upon soft Ground: And therefore, they ought, no doubt, to be disposed of for some such Purpose; but when Horses, with those Infirmities, happen to be young, and have good Hoofs, it is, no doubt, worth while to be at some Pains to preserve them. The Fleshiness of the Legs in young Horses is not so great an Imperfection as it is in those which are full aged or old: Sometimes by observing a right OEconomy in their Diet, and by bestowing good Dressing upon them, those Parts grow more firm and nervous, as they become more advanced: And in case such Infirmities prove obstinate, the best way is, no doubt, to turn them out to Grass, where they ought to run until they be of a fitter Age for Service, or to work them in the Plow or Harrows. This may only be done when they are of good Temper, and have many promising Signs of future Service; or when they cannot be sold to any Advantage.

But when Troop Horses happen to be surbated, or have other Imperfections in their Feet, those are not easy to be remedy'd, because of their extraordinary Corpulency, and the great Tendency of the Humours into their Limbs, which are, for the most part, more relaxed than in those which are of smaller Stature, and of a more



more light and active Make. But the Life-Guards and Horse-Grenadiers have their Horses most subject to those Infirmities, because of their continual standing without Air and Exercise, and where they are, for Appearance, obliged to feed high.

As to the particular Allowance of Proven-<sup>Their</sup>der, it is commonly by Order the same through-<sup>particular</sup>out every Regiment or Troop; and it is aug-<sup>Allow-</sup>mented upon Marches, or according to the<sup>ance.</sup> other Services required of them. The Condition of some Horses may be such, that they may require at all Times more than the common Allowance, and others may not require so much; yet there is a Necessity to keep to Method in this respect, because of the Fund from whence it comes, and the great Trouble that a different Way of Feeding would occasion. The allotted Quantity of Corn is sufficient to any Horse in every Troop or Regiment; and those that require more, are commonly the greatest Jades, and from a Weakness and Imbecillity in their Stomachs, the Corn often comes away whole and undigested; and therefore, the best Way is to part with such Horses, if the Infirmary be of a long Standing: But when there is Reason to suspect, that a Horse's Allowance is more than he requires; which may be known from hence, that he will be apt to turn dainty, and give some Appearances of Surfeiting; the only Way is either to abate his Allowance, or give him more Exercise. I have been told, some of the Life-Guards, who have their Horses in their own Keeping, maintain them with a very small Quantity of Corn, neither do they over-feed them with Hay; and yet there are among those Horses, which look better, and are more free



free from Accidents than others which are kept at their full Allowance.

Their  
Water  
and Air-  
ing.

It is a very good Method in the Horse and Dragoon Service, that they ride in Troops to Water, under the Care of a Serjeant, or other inferior Officer. This is an Advantage that the Guard Horses have not, but are for the most part watred in the Stable, and drink cold, chilling Well-Water, which, besides the want of Air and Exercise, whereof they are by this means deny'd, such Water is oftentimes not very wholesome. But when Horses are rid out together in a Body, it chears and invigorates their Spirits; for all Horses are sociable, and love Company: And this inures them so much to keep in their Ranks, that they are less apt to be rusty, but are more obedient in their Exercise; whereby they are not near so much exposed to Accidents, as those that are rid out single, or have most of their Water in the Stable. It is a good Method also, that they are not suffer'd after watering to ride above an easy Trot. The Galloping, so common in this Kingdom, to warm a Horse's Water after drinking, may not be attended with those Inconveniences which should naturally follow after a long Habit, especially to Hunters, and other light Horses; but it would soon destroy those of the heavy Breed.

Antimo-  
ny useful  
to Troop  
Horses af-  
ter Grass.

The Method that most observe in giving Troop Horses *Antimony* after they come from Grass, is no less commendable. *Antimony* attenuates and thins the Blood, which after Grass is very apt to be gross and viscid; it promotes insensible Transpiration by opening the Pores of the Skin, and causes a great deal of the excrementitious Matter to be thrown off by those

Passa-



Passages, which otherwise would be apt to cause a Redundancy upon the inward Parts, or where-ever there happens to be any Weakness or Relaxation; and what the most usual Consequences are upon such Accounts, have been already often declared. The proper Way of giving Antimony after Grass, is to have it rubbed in a Mortar; for of itself it is too gross, and there is but little of it can pass into the Lacteal Vessels, but goes along with the Dung, to which it gives a black Hue; and because of its Weight, it falls so much to the Bottom of the Manger, that a Horse cannot gather up half the Quantity that is given him for a Dose: But when it is pounded, an Ounce or two may be mixed once a Day with a Feeding of Bran in the Morning, which is much more proper to give it with than Oats, because little of it can be lost among the Bran. All Horses ought to be pretty much in Exercise while they are fed with Antimony, that it may the better digest and pass into the Mass of Blood: And that it may be the more readily forwarded into the small Capillary Vessels, where its Operation chiefly lies. But because no Horse can bear Exercise without sufficient Sustenance, he ought therefore, after the first Week, to have an Allowance of Corn for his Supper, tho' in the Beginning Corn is by no means proper; because when the Blood is viscid, as happens in most young Horses newly taken up from Grass, the Addition of Corn must, by increasing the Quantity thereof, render it more liable to Obstruction, until the Pores of the Skin are gradually opened, that the Discharges may easily be made from thence.

The



The Consequences of giving *Antimony* in this manner must needs therefore be bad ; because when the Blood is thrown in great Quantity, and with a more than ordinary Velocity, from Vessels that are large, into those which are infinitely small, and where, by its previous Indisposition, it is also viscid and glutinous, and where the Pores of the Skin are also very much obstructed by their being long in a cool Air without dressing, when a free Passage forwards happens thus to be denied, it must needs return in great Plenty back again upon the Lungs, or other principal Bowels : And a great deal may also loiter in the Extremities of the Skin, which, at the same time, will be apt to cause Boils and Eruptions that may end in the *Farcin*, or some other Leprous Distemper. The first Effects are Surfeiting, and afterwards what the Farriers term *Molten Grease* ; the Legs of young Horses will be apt to swell unmercifully after such Management, which, as it comes with Violence upon the Constitution, and may be accompany'd with many other bad Symptoms, must therefore be very hard to cure.

To prevent the  
Accidents  
arising  
from the  
Use of  
*Antimony*.

But to prevent all the Accidents that may arise from *Antimony*, and to render it truly beneficial to the Bodies of Horses, it should at first be given with a moderate Diet, as has been directed, and with gentle Exercise. They should, while under this Course, be rubbed more than ordinary, to promote Perspiration ; but at no time too harshly, for that may break the Texture of the Skin. And some Horses Legs have particularly been injured in this respect, by rubbing with too hard Instruments, which, instead of keeping the Swelling under, has often increased it very much. When a Horse



Horse perspires freely, which may be known by the Augmentation of the outward Scurf, he may not only have more brisk Exercise, but should also be fed with Corn, as above directed; for when a great deal of the perspirable Matter is thrown off by the Help of the Antimony, a Horse is apt to turn lean. There are many Horses which will lose Flesh, and grow extremely faint. Sometimes also they turn lax upon an Antimonial Diet, and scour as if they were under purging Physick; tho' this is not an immediate, but a posterior Effect of the Antimony, after a Horse has been weaken'd with too strong a Perspiration: And therefore whenever this Symptom appears, it is Time to leave it off, and feed altogether with Corn; yet so as to advance from a lesser to a greater Quantity.

It oftentimes adds very much to the Efficacy of the *Antimony*, as well as to other Medicinal Diets, that they are not continued too long at once; but after they have been comply'd with for a Week or more, to leave off for the like Space of Time, and then to begin again. There is nothing which works insensibly upon the Body in the manner of Alteratives, but soon grows familiar by daily Use, and thereby loses its Efficacy. A Respite is therefore proper to keep up the Virtue of such Things; and sometimes also it is needful to increase the Quantity, which, with respect to *Antimony*, may be given pretty largely; and the rather, because when the Body of a Horse is thoroughly season'd to it, that the Passages of Nature are all free and open, he need not then be stinted of his Food, but may have his full Allowance of Provender.

Thus



Thus much we judged might not be altogether unacceptable, concerning the giving *Antimony* to Troop Horses, as their Bodies require such Helps more than any other after Grass. But yet those Horses which shew no Signs of Disorder, but are in a likely way to thrive, had better be without it. No Medicine, of however mild Operation, but must be in some measure injurious and hurtful to Bodies which are in a perfect good State of Health, as they must of Necessity cause an Alteration where none is wanting; and therefore, if for Custom's Sake, *Antimony* be exhibited to any such Horses, it ought to be as sparingly as possible; for a good OEconomy is best preserved in the Animal Body by the means which Nature herself has appointed, to wit, Food and necessary Labour.

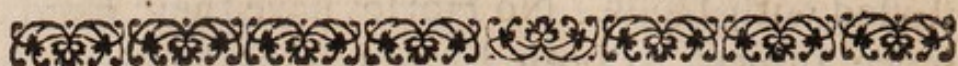
The Feet  
of Troop  
Horses to  
be care-  
fully  
looked to.

It remains, that we put a Period to this Subject, by putting the Soldier in mind, that as good dressing not only conduces very much to the Health and Beauty of his Horse, but tends greatly to his own Credit and Reputation; so his Feet, above all Things, ought to be carefully looked to. This will no less redound to his Profit and Advantage, if at any time he be called out to Service; for nothing can be a greater Disappointment to a brave Spirit, when employ'd upon any Enterprize, than to be retarded by the Insufficiency of his Horse. As those Kind of Horses seem chiefly design'd for other Uses, which are not so great a Trial to their Feet as riding; so we find many of them defective in that respect, if compared with those of another Mould and Stature: Therefore their Feet should be picked very clean every time they return from Water, and sometimes  
stuffed



stuffed with Dung. No Horses have their Hoofs more subject to both Extremes of being too hard or too soft. Those which have their Legs charged with Flesh, as that often causes a Fluctuation of Humours towards their Feet, so it exposes them to the latter: And such as are the cleanest limbed, especially if they be full-aged or old, are by much standing apt to have their Feet hard and brittle. This is best remedy'd by anointing them often with a Mixture of Tar and Oil; for of all Fat Things Oil Olive is certainly the best, as it has no other manifest Quality besides that it is emollient and softning; and for this purpose, that which may be had at the Shops for Half a Crown, or Three Shillings the Gallon, is sufficient. But when the Hoofs are too soft and tender, they ought to be frequently washed with Well-Water, and sometimes with Chamberlye. But Vitriol, or Coperafs Water, is to be preferred, when a more efficacious Remedy is required, and in some extraordinary Cases, nothing can be so serviceable as the *Unguentum Ægyptiacum* apply'd warm, and bound all round like a Poultis. This will harden the Hoofs to a Miracle, excepting when that Infirmary proceeds from the Legs and Feet being diseased, that there is a violent Tendency of the Humours towards them, wherein such Means must be used as are suited to the particular Circumstances of those Maladies. But as nothing is a greater Detriment to bad Feet than ill Shooeing; so nothing is a greater Means of their Preservation than when they are well shod; concerning which, no Cautions need be given in the Army, where so much Care is taken to provide Persons sufficiently qualify'd for that purpose.





## C H A P. XIV.

*Observations concerning Breeding, and the Manner of raising a beautiful and useful Race of Horses, founded on the Duke of Newcastle's Method.*

**T**HIS Subject has been looked upon of such Publick Benefit among the politest Nations of the World, that it has employ'd the Pens of some of the ablest Writers in most Ages; who, although they have agreed in many general Topicks, yet as to Particulars they have in many Things varied from one another; but that is chiefly owing to the different Customs in different Countries, which cannot be avoided, because the Soil and Climate in different Regions must, undoubtedly, cause an Alteration with respect to many Circumstances. But the too superstitious Observance of the Moon, and other Constellations, with Abundance of the like frivolous Things, have hardly been omitted in any of their Writings, until the Duke of Newcastle exploded those ridiculous Superstitions.

What we have to say after that Nobleman, needs indeed be but very short, unless we were professedly to write a particular Treatise which should contain all lesser Circumstances and Accidents, which would undoubtedly be of very general Use, as well to improve as preserve the Breed of our finest Horses. But this could be done by none as it ought to be, but one who is not only acquainted with the Animal OEconomy, but must have also had great Experience in the Breed-



Breeding of Horses, either for himself or others.

The *Sieur de Solleysell*, though he was the ablest Horseman in all *France*, in his Time, yet in his Discourse of Breeding he does not pretend to say much from his own Experience, as having not been used to the Breeding of Horses; but has only made some Observations on the Duke of *Newcastle's* Method, which being but short, he has translated into his Book, and has usher'd it in with a Prelude, declaring, "That those Things are partly grounded upon Reason, and partly on Experience, which cannot be acquired, but by those who keep or breed Horses, or have at least the Oversight and Government of one. That for his own part, the Knowledge he had in Breeding, was either owing to the Information he had got in those Countries where they breed Horses, or from the Observations he had himself made in rearing some Colts. For which Reason he made use of the Duke of *Newcastle's* Method, as the only Person who had most Experience, and the best Judge in all those Matters." The following Discourse being also founded on the same Nobleman's Experience, pretends to little else than a further Illustration thereof; which, we hope, as it is the best Extant, so it will not be the less acceptable, that it is still more improved and demonstrated.

In the choosing of a Stallion, which is the first Thing to be regarded, we need not repeat what has been already said concerning the Colour or Marks of Horses, especially since those Things are often determined by People's Fancies; neither need we say any thing further

P

than



Qualifica-  
tions of a  
right Stallion.

than what has been already observed concerning their true Shape and Make ; but take Notice, as to Colour, that the Noble Person whose Judgment we follow, prefers the *Light-Bay*, with the Mane, Tail, Extremities of the Legs, and Lift along the Back, all Black ; the *Chestnut* or *Scarlet-Bay*, the *Roan* well mark'd, or with a *More's Head* ; the dark *Dappled-Grey*, and some others, as what obtain chiefly in the general Esteem of most Men to give a good Tincture to our Races. And above all he prefers *Barbs* or *Spaniards*, as having had very good and beautiful Colts by both, but especially by the first. He likewise recommends the Horses of any other Kind that are perfect, and rightly turn'd for the Manage, as the fittest to be made use of for Stallions. But with respect to *Spanish Horses*, *Barbs*, and other Outlandish Horses, he says, they can never be too bold and vigorous, because the best Horse of any foreign Kingdom soon degenerates in his Race ; and the Colts which he begets will rather fall short of their Sire than improve.

A Stallion  
should be  
free from  
hereditary  
Distempers.

A Stallion should be free from those Infirmit-  
ties which are term'd hereditary ; such as he  
may derive to his Race ; and therefore his Eyes  
ought to be good naturally ; his Wind good,  
and his Legs free from all Manner of Excref-  
cencies : Such as *Windgals*, *Sparvins*, *Vessigons*, and  
the like. His Feet should also be sound, and  
his Hoofs of a perfect and good Make. This  
latter may be more particularly hereditary than  
any other of the above-mentioned Imperfecti-  
ons ; for it is very certain, as the Goodness or  
Badness of the Foot oftentimes depends up-  
on the Shape ; and as it is reasonable to be-  
lieve, and indeed no less certain, that Colts of-  
ten



ten participate of their Sire in that respect; so if a Horse has bad Feet, which are at the same Time of a Make that disposes them to be so, he ought to be rejected as a Stallion.

The other Infirmities, deem'd hereditary, How to know when the Distempers of Horses are hereditary, and when not, such as Moons and Defluxions in the Eyes, may, no doubt, be really so; but yet as the most common Accidents often bring a Weakness into the Eyes while the Horse is young, and such as cannot be easily overcome, when wrong Methods are comply'd with at first, as often happens by blowing Powders into their Eyes, and using strong Eye-waters, without such Cautions as are necessary to Parts that are naturally the most tender: When such Methods are follow'd, a Horse, which originally has extraordinary good Eyes, may for ever afterwards become subject to Rheums and Defluxions, tho' they would by no means be derived to their Race. Any one who has known such a Horse from the Time he was a Colt, might easily be sensible, whether the Infirmities of his Eyes were hereditary or not, by carefully taking notice of all the Accidents that had happen'd to him, and the immediate Tendency of those Accidents: And if a Horse be naturally weak-eyed, that Imperfection must shew itself betimes, before the Eyes are arriv'd to their full Strength and Vigor; for if it should happen not to appear until a Horse is grown to his full Strength, it is rather to be attributed to some Accident than to the Sire.

The Imperfections of the Legs, such as *Windgals*, *Spavins*, &c. are also not unfrequently caused by Accidents: But yet they are, no doubt, often hereditary, and somewhat resemble the Gout, which we all know very often runs



in the Blood of certain Families. But those Distempers which are term'd Hereditary, are for the most part, in the Beginning, brought on by some Error in the Non-naturals, or by some slight Accident; and there is only this Difference, that the Symptoms of an hereditary Distemper either continue more or less at all times; or if they wear off upon certain Occasions, they return again; and that is owing to some peculiar Disposition in the Body, which renders them liable to such Relapses upon every Error or slight Accident, as has been observed in another Place. But when a Distemper is not hereditary, it is more easily conquer'd, and seldom apt to return again, excepting by some extraordinary Cause.

The Diseases and Imperfections of the Lungs affecting the Wind of a Horse, may also be styled hereditary, even as some Families are more than ordinarily subject to *Asthma's*: But it is not improbable, that most Horses affected in this Manner, may have had their Wind injur'd by some ill Usage. However, a Horse that blows, or is any Ways defective in his Wind, ought by no means to be used for a Stallion; for it is not a natural Imperfection, it must proceed from some Distemper in his Lungs, Livor, or some other of his inward Parts, and the Colts which he begets will be weak and languishing.

The Properties of a right Horse for a Stallion have been very well described by all the Ancients, but particularly by *Varro*, and *Virgil* in his 3d *Georgick*, from whence we have the following Lines.



*The Colt that for a Stallion is design'd,  
 By sure Presages shews his gen'rous Kind,  
 Of able Body, sound of Limb and Wind.  
 Upright he walks on Pasterns firm and streight;  
 His Motions easy, prancing in his Gate.  
 The First to lead the Way, to tempt the Flood,  
 To pass the Bridge unknown, nor fear the trem-  
 (bling Wood.  
 Dauntless at empty Noises, lofty neck'd,  
 Sharp-headed, Barrel-belly'd, broadly back'd;  
 Brawny his Chest, and deep his Colour Grey,  
 For Beauty dappled, or the brightest Bay;  
 Faint White and Dun will scarce the rearing pay.*  
 Dryden's Virgil.

The Mare ought to be no less perfect than the Horse, to give a good Tincture to our Breed. The Duke recommends *Spanish* Mares to breed upon, or those of the Kingdom of *Naples*, which are delicately shaped. But because these cannot be procured easily, he recommends the most beautiful *English* Mares. Indeed *Spanish* Mares are not now to be had upon any Account; and as for the *Neapolitan* Mares, they are not what they have been. Our *English* Mares are also very much degenerated, because it is to be presumed there is no Law to prevent our finest Breeding Mares to be sent out of the Kingdom. A great deal in the Goodness of a Race is, no doubt, owing to the Mare; infomuch that if the Horse be never so sound, yet if the Mare be diseased, the Colt will, in all probability, be so too: For altho' the Matter which gives Origin and Form to the Colt, proceeds altogether from the Horse, yet as it is nourished by the Mare, both in the Womb and afterwards, it

What  
Mares are  
best to  
breed on.

must,



must, no doubt, be tinctured with the Constitution of its Dam. But yet an Indisposition of this Kind may more easily be overcome, than that which proceeds from the Sire.

But the Mare should be well chosen on other Accounts. She ought to be of a delicate, fine Shape, and herself of good Lineage; otherwise, if she be of a coarse, clumsy Make, the Colt may take after her in that Respect. We have indeed sometimes a very fine Colt from an ordinary Mare, that has been cover'd with a fine Stallion. But it happens oftentimes the quite contrary; and sometimes the Colt participates of both, and will, in some Things, resemble the Sire, and in others the Dam. It is the same with respect to Colour.

The Temper and Disposition of the Mare ought also to be regarded. A Mare of a good docible Temper may sometimes bring forth Colts that are quite the Reverse, if it happens that the Stallion is of a froward, surly Disposition: But a Mare that is sullen, or ill-natured herself, will seldom produce a good-temper'd Colt. Which may perhaps be owing to this, that the earliest and first Impressions, when they are bad, lay the Foundation of an ill Habit; and thus, as the Temper drawn from the Dam may, in a great measure, be habitual, so with prudent Usage it may be more prudently overcome, than when it is derived altogether from the Sire.

The Man-  
ner of  
Feeding. As to the Manner of Feeding before Cover-  
ing, some are of Opinion that both Horse and  
Mare ought to fed alike, and on the same  
Kind of Diet. *Solleysell* is somewhat of this  
Mind. The Method of the Ancients was to  
pamper the Stallion, and to work or ride the  
Mare



Mare very hard, as may be also learned from those Lines of *Virgil*.

———— *When now the Time*  
*Approaches for the stately Steed to climb,*  
*With Food enable him to make his Court ;*  
*Distend his Chine, and pamper him for Sport ;*  
*Feed him with Herbs whatever thou canst find,*  
*Of generous Warmth, and of salacious Kind.*  
*Then water him, and drinking what he can,*  
*Encourage him to thirst again with Bran.*  
*Instructed thus, produce him to the Fair,*  
*And join in Wedlock to the longing Mare.*  
*For if the Sire be faint, and out of Case,*  
*He will be copied in his famish'd Race,*  
*And sink beneath the pleasing Task assign'd, &c.*

*As for the Females, with industrious Care*  
*Take down their Mettle, keep them lean and bare :*  
*When conscious of their past Delight and keen,*  
*To take the Leap, and prove the Sport again ;*  
*With scanty Measure then supply their Food,*  
*And when athirst, restrain them from the Flood.*  
*Their Bodies harass, sink them when they run,*  
*And fry their melting Marrow in the Sun.*  
*Starve them when Barns beneath their Burden groan,*  
*And winnow'd Chaff by Western Winds is blown :*  
*For fear the Rankness of the swelling Womb*  
*Should scant the Passage, and confine the room ;*  
*Lest the fat Furrows should the Sense destroy*  
*Of genial Lust, and dull the Seat of Joy.*

These Precepts are heighten'd in the Poetical Style, and are therefore only to be understood in this Sense, That the Stallion should be pamper'd and well fed with such Things as are proper to excite Lust, and enable him also to do



his Business effectually, that the Mare may not be defrauded, nor his Race degenerate. But because too much Fat is oftentimes prejudicial to Mares, and conduces to destroy the exquisite Sense they ought to have in the Parts of Generation; and as it may likewise contribute to straiten the Passage into the Womb, which may happen at its inward or lesser Neck, that Rankness and excessive Growth of Fat should therefore be broken down by Labour and moderate Feeding.

The Food  
of a  
Stallion  
before  
Covering.

A Stallion, when he is to cover Mares, ought, no doubt, to be well fed, and his Food should be such as affords the purest and best Nourishment: Tho' many of our ordinary Stallions cover Mares at Grass, and serve them very effectually. And it seems this was usual in many Places in Queen Elizabeth's Time, by the Accounts we have from *Blundevill*. But if a Stallion be to cover a good Number of Mares, it will be very necessary to feed him with Provender, such as the Duke of *Newcastle* directs, viz. either good clean Oats, Pease, Beans, or coarse Bread, or sometimes one, sometimes another, by turns, for the Space of Three Months before Covering Time. And if he be kept in the Stable, as is usual to all fine Stallions, he ought to have the sweetest Hay; neither should he be suffer'd to eat too much of it, nor of any thing else that may render him pursive: Otherwise nothing will more readily injure his Wind, when he comes to cover. The Reason is the same as in other violent Actions, where there is a Plenitude of Body, which we have elsewhere discuss'd: But there is this Difference between the Act of Generation, and all other laborious Exercises, that besides the Agitation of Body,



Body, there is also a violent Agitation in the Spirits, which, while it lasts, puts the Blood into an infinitely more violent Motion than the strongest Fever; and therefore, if a Horse is not well in Wind, at the same time his Body is pamper'd, he may very readily suffer in that Act.

The Method that noble Person prescribes, is, His Exercise no doubt, very proper to prevent Accidents, to cise. ride any Horse that is to cover twice a Day to water; and every time to walk him for an Hour at least in some Field, where he takes Delight; for the Air and Exercise will digest his Food well, and greatly invigorate his Spirits, which is of no small Importance in the Act of Generation. And there is no other Difference in the feeding Mares but this, that they ought not to be too fat when they are brought to be horsed, otherwise they will not be so apt to hold, as when they are somewhat low of Body.

The Season of the Year every one sufficiently knows to be the latter End of *May*, or <sup>The Season of Covering.</sup> the Beginning of *June*, that the Grass may be ready and plentiful about the Time of Foaling; and I believe no one, besides *De Grey*, ever appointed any other Season. This is manifest from hence, that excepting in hotter Countries, the Mares are never so much in Lust, nor desire the Horse so eagerly, as about that Time.

And as to their Age, it is commonly agreed to <sup>The Age of Horse and Mare for Breeding.</sup> by all Persons, that a Horse should never be suffer'd to cover until he be Six, nor a Mare to be cover'd until she be Three. When Horses are made use of as Stallions before that Age, besides that they often deceive the Mares, they are also apt to injure their Constitutions, and lay the Foundation of a future Imbecillity and Weak-



Weakness; for when they are young, they go about those Acts with so much Violence, partly by reason of Novelty, and partly from a Luxuriancy and Fulness of Blood, which as it is also in their Nonage apt to be viscid, so the Hazard they run is the greater.

What  
Number  
of Mares  
a Horse  
may co-  
ver.

When a Horse is once used to cover, he may have twenty Mares in the Season, according to the Duke's Observations. But I think it might be the safest way not to allow him so many the first Year, it being manifest from the same Nobleman's Experience, that when a Horse has more than twenty Mares at any Period of his Age, he is apt to decline, and have the Hair fall off from his Mane and Tail. After Fifteen, he orders a Horse to be laid aside as a Stallion, otherwise the Race will degenerate. But there is no certain Rule in this, as some Horses are more vigorous at that Age than others are at Ten: Only when a Horse is growing old, he ought to be spared as much as possible, not only upon the Account of his Breed, but also because any Injury in the Decline of Age will render him soon unfit for any other Service.

The Man-  
ner of co-  
vering.

As this Act is of itself natural, so it ought not by any means be forced; and therefore a Mare should never be cover'd in Hand. But those who would have their Mares rightly served, should have a Piece of Ground paled in and well fenced, where the Mare should be brought to the Stallion, and remain with him two or three Days. But the Duke's Method is better, and more suited to Persons who raise a Breed of their own; and is as follows:

' You should about the End of *May*, or Be-  
' ginning of *June*, at which time there is com-  
' monly



' monly abundance of Grafs, put your Mares  
 ' into an Inclosure well pallisado'd, or inclosed  
 ' with Hedges, and which may be capable to  
 ' feed them the whole time the *Stallion* is to  
 ' be with them, or that they are in Season.  
 ' In which Inclosure or Pasture, all your Mares  
 ' are to be put together, as well those which  
 ' are Barren, as others; then lead forth your  
 ' Stallion, having first taken off his hind Feet  
 ' Shooes, to prevent thereby his hurting the  
 ' Mares when he sticks or strikes out; but his  
 ' fore Shooes must be kept on for the Preserva-  
 ' tion of his Feet: Then cause him before you  
 ' turn him loose among the Mares, to cover one  
 ' twice in Hand, to render him the more calm  
 ' and gentle; after which, take off the Bridle,  
 ' and let him go freely to the rest, with whom  
 ' he will become so familiar, and use them so  
 ' kindly, that they will, at last, make love to  
 ' him; so that not one of them will be horsed,  
 ' but as they are in Season. After he has ser-  
 ' ved them all, he will try them again, one by  
 ' one, and will only cover such as willingly re-  
 ' ceive him. He knows very well when they  
 ' desire no more of his Company, and when he  
 ' hath performed his Work: So that then he  
 ' begins to beat at the Palisade, that he may  
 ' be gone; at which time he is to be removed,  
 ' and your Mares put into a fresh Inclo-  
 ' sure.

' These are the wise Means (says the same  
 ' Author) Nature makes use of. And I assure  
 ' you, that of twenty Mares there will not  
 ' three fail; whereas if you caused them to  
 ' be covered in Hand, the one Half would not  
 ' hold. There should be built in that Inclo-  
 ' sure wherein the Stallion runs with the Mares,



‘ a little Lodge, to retire and preserve him  
 ‘ from the scorching Heats; in which there  
 ‘ should be also a Manger, wherein you are to  
 ‘ give him his Oats, Pease, split Beans, Bread,  
 ‘ or what else he liketh best: And he must be  
 ‘ always thus had a Care of, while he is with  
 ‘ the Mares, which will be about six or seven  
 ‘ Weeks.

How Mares are to be managed after Covering. The Mares should be turned into a Pasture where they have great Plenty of good Grass; because they have not only themselves but their Foal also to nourish; which, to make it thrive, requires the Dam to be well fed: And in Winter they should have Plenty of good Hay, with a moderate Allowance of Provender.

In all Places where Mares with Foal are turned out to Grass, there should be Hovels and Places of Shelter, to defend them from the scorching Heat of the Sun, and good Water to drink, as well as Change of Pasture, that they may have fresh Grass to feed upon; they ought to be kept from all Labour about the time of their Conception, and for some Space thereafter; but when the Foal is once quick, moderate Exercise will not be hurtful, but yet it may be injurious to Mares at all Times while they go with Foal, unless good Care be taken, especially in riding them, because of the Position of their Bodies, which would be apt to cast the *Embryo* and its Burden forwards upon the Stomach, and thereby weaken the Digestion of the Aliment which might hinder them feeding so plentifully as they ought at that Time; besides that it would cause an over-great Pressure upon their Lungs and Midriff, which might easily injure their Wind. Those ordinary Mares which are  
 put



put to Draught, or are made to carry Burdens of a moderate Weight, suffer nothing by it, but is rather an Advantage to them, if they are not work'd before they have been five or six Months gone with Foal; for all moderate Labour loosens the *Embryo* from any Adhesions that may be preternatural, whereby they foal with the less Difficulty.

Sometimes Mares are very much put to it in Foaling: And there are Instances of some that have died; but of many which have killed their Foals. It is not very easy, in case a Foal be in a wrong Position, to turn it right, not only because the Passage in Mares is but narrow, but because of the Weight and Bulk of the *Fœtus*. Yet that should constantly be essay'd in all such Circumstances, and there should always be some understanding and careful Person near them about that Time, to give such Directions as may, in all difficult Cases, be necessary to their safe Delivery. When a Mare labours hard to bring forth her Foal, all the Passages should be anointed with Oil; and if it present any other Way, than with its Head forwards, it must be gently put back; and the Person must endeavour to catch hold of its Head or Chin, according to the Directions recited by *Solleysell*, which were communicated to him by an old Cavalier, who had the Oversight of Numbers of Stud-Mares; who ordered that in case the Foal could not be brought away with the Hand, a Piece of Cord should be fix'd round its Chin to draw it out by Force. And if the Foal be dead, in that case to save the Mare it should be brought away, though in Pieces; and there is nothing to contradict that Gentleman's Experience; for any such

How to  
assist a  
Mare in  
Foaling.



such Mare may afterwards be serviceable, and bring forth living Foals, provided she be young, or has not been over-much torne.

A Mare under those Circumstances ought also to have a Cordial Drench once or twice repeated; *viz.* ‘ A Quart of White-Wine with a Dram of Cinnamon, and half a Scruple of Saffron, both in Powder; with two Drams of Borax dissolved in it: Or the following, which the above-mentioned Cavalier says, he frequently used with Success.

‘ Take two Quarts of Mares Milk, Asses Milk, or Goats Milk, Three Pints of strong Claret-Wine Lees, Oil Olive Two Pounds, with the Juice of white Onions one Pound; mix altogether, and make it luke-warm; after which give it the Mare at twice, an Hour betwixt each Drench. The same Kind of Drenches are also of Use to expel the After-Burden.

It will also be necessary to grasp a Mare in this Condition by the Nostrils, holding her fast till she labours pretty hard at her Flanks. This, by hindring Respiration, and keeping the Lungs full and distended with Air, will make a Pressure upon the *Midriff*; and as that will also bear upon the *Matrix*, so it must needs greatly help the Expulsion of the Foal.

But nothing will prove of greater Benefit at such a Time than emollient Clysters. Sometimes when a Mare happens, at the time of foaling, to be costive, and has her great Gut pent up with hard Balls of Dung, it straitens the Passages to such a Degree, that there is no Room



Room for her Delivery. In this Case, as is usual in all Costiveness, a Boy, or some Person, who has a small Hand, being first well anointed, should rake her Fundament, and bring away as much of the Dung as he can get at; and then a Clyster ought to be injected, either of fat Broth and Treacle, or about two Quarts or more of a Decoction made of *Mallows*, *Marsh-Mallows*, *Pellitory*, *Mercury*, and such like, with a Pound of *Molossus Treacle* dissolved in it. This will be greatly serviceable, not only where the Mare is in violent Pain, but in all other Cases whatsoever.

Some Persons, after the Mare has foaled, order her to be walked up and down an Hour or Two every Day for the first Week, that her Milk may come down the more plentifully: But this I judge to be not only hurtful to the Mare, but unnecessary; because that will be better effectuated by letting her have Plenty of good Grass to feed upon. The Ancients were wont to house both Mare and Foals, for the Space of Ten Days after Foaling, to prevent the Injuries of the cold Air; so careful were they of their Breed, notwithstanding those Persons, we here speak of, lived in warmer Climates than ours.

As to the Time of a Foal's Sucking, People are of different Opinions. The greatest Number both among the Ancients and Moderns allow Two Years before they wean: But although it was customary among the Ancients to let them suck so long; yet they used constantly to house them in Winter, and along with their Milk allowed them both Hay and Provender, which in those Countries was dry'd Barley and Beans. They judged this Method not only

How a Mare should be ordered after Foaling.

How long Foals should suck.

made



made them strong, but also more tractable and tame. But it has been customary in *England*, for some Ages past, to follow a contrary Method, few Persons being willing to lose so much Time of their Mares; and this has, no doubt, taken Place the more, since the *Duke of Newcastle's* Book has been published, wherein he orders the Foal to suck till towards the Middle of *November*, and then to be weaned three Days before the Full of the Moon.

I will not pretend to offer any Thing positively against a Person who had so much Experience in those Matters; yet one should think it might be reasonable that a Foal should suck at least, one whole Year, especially since the Ancients allowed them as much more Time, who had by all the Accounts we can learn, as fine and delicate Horses as any our Age produces: And many of them were so strong and durable, that they lived till they were incredibly old. Besides that the Spring seems to be the properest Time to wean them, because of the approaching Grass; and the Mare will nevertheless be fit to be covered again.

The Duke  
of *Newca-*  
*astle's* Me-  
thod of or-  
dering of  
Foals after  
they are  
weaned.

The Method which the Duke proposes immediately after Weaning, is certainly very reasonable; and excepting only that he restrains them from their Dams, is in a great Measure built upon the Ancients; and that is, to gather all the Colts together, and put about each of their Necks a Piece of Rope, whereupon is to be hung about six Inches of the End of a Cow's Horn, or the Horn of an old Deer, that thereby they may be the more easily catched hold of upon Occasion; after which they are all to be brought Male and Female into a warm and clean



clean Stable, well provided of Racks and Mangers pretty low set, where they are to stand loose, and at their Liberty, to feed on good Hay and Wheat-Bran, which will make them drink lustily, and give them a Belly; and now and then to have a few Oats to make them lusty and strong: And when the Weather is good, they are to be drove out into some open Court-Yard, where they may have the Air and Sun, and sufficient Room to play and sport themselves. About the End of *May*, or when the Grass is sufficient, the Year-old Colts are all to be turn'd out; but there must be a Lodge in each Pasture sufficient to hold them all in the Heat of the Day; and the Door thereof very wide, that they may not hurt one another in going in and out, during which Time they are to be handled as little as possible, for fear of hurting them, or stinting their Growth. Next Winter they are to be taken up again and dress'd, that they become tame and tractable. This Method is to be follow'd until they be full Three Years old, and then they are fit to be back'd. This, he says, is the true Way to make them strong and lusty.

And he observes, that it signifies not much what kind of Pasture they be put into, so it be but dry, and has good Water for them to drink. This is with an Eye to the Method used by the Ancients, and at this Day happens naturally in *Barbary*, and other Places; where the Mountain *Barbs* are observed to be the most hardy and courageous of all other Horses; which has, no doubt, been the Reason why not only the Ancients, but some of latter Ages, have turn'd their Colts into Pastures among rocky Places. Formerly this was done with Design to harden  
 Q their



their Hoofs, and render them more strong and durable, and to make their Legs strong and nervous; whereof they had, no doubt, Experience: But whether those Effects might proceed from a habitual going on hard Ground while they were young, or from the Nature of the Pasture in those Parts, or from the Air, I shall not determine, though methinks it is not improbable all these Causes may contribute to the rendring such Horses more hardy than others. This is manifest in our little *Scots* and *Welsh* Horses: Tho' in many of those Parts, there is not sufficient Pasture to keep up the Size; but in two or three Generations they would be apt to degenerate into such Tits as are bred among those Mountains.

But this puts me in Mind of a Caution which the Duke also gives in Breeding; and that is, never to use any other Stallions for a Race of fine Horses, but those which are the true Natives of *Spain* or *Barbary*: For although the Horses which they beget, if they be kept clean and warm in Winter, and are suffer'd only to feed on dry Pastures in Summer, will be very little inferior in Size, Shape and Make to their Sires; yet the Colts which these beget, though upon Mares as good and as fine as their own Dams, will very much degenerate and resemble the Breed of our own Country. Another Observation concerning the different Way of feeding and rearing Colts, and the Effect that it has upon their Shape and Make, is also worthy to be taken Notice of. But we shall transcribe the whole Passage at full Length.



‘ It is good, says that Noble Person, to house  
 ‘ every Winter your Foals, and all Summer to  
 ‘ put them to Grafs; till they be past Three  
 ‘ Years old; because they will thereby be so  
 ‘ much the stronger to endure Fatigue: It mat-  
 ‘ ters not what Kind of Pasture they feed in,  
 ‘ provided it be but dry, and have a Watering-  
 ‘ Place in it; for if they can fill their Bellies  
 ‘ once in 24 Hours, it sufficeth. Neither is it  
 ‘ needful that you seek after so many Rarities  
 ‘ and Diversities of Pastures, which many Peo-  
 ‘ ple require, such as Rocky, Mountanous,  
 ‘ Meadowy or Level; for provided you can  
 ‘ have the Conveniency of separating those of  
 ‘ one Year old from those of two or three, and  
 ‘ so of the rest, you may feed them as you  
 ‘ please. Yea, a Man may bring up a very fine  
 ‘ Horse in his Court. And what is the Rea-  
 ‘ son, that the *Barbs*, *Turks*, *Neapolitans*, and  
 ‘ *Spanish* Horses are so fine, nervous, so free of  
 ‘ superfluous Flesh, and of so delicate a Size,  
 ‘ and so well proportioned, but only because  
 ‘ they are brought up in a hot Climate, and  
 ‘ consequently with a dry Kind of Food? The  
 ‘ Secret then of bringing Horses rightly up in  
 ‘ cold Countries, consists in nothing else but  
 ‘ keeping them warm in Winter, and feeding  
 ‘ them with a dry Kind of Food; and in turn-  
 ‘ ing them out in Summer to dry Pastures.

‘ Take two Colts alike, well shaped, begot  
 ‘ by the same Stallion upon two Mares equally  
 ‘ beautiful; and keep one of them warm in the  
 ‘ Winter-Time, feeding him also with dry  
 ‘ Kind of Food, until he be three Years old;  
 ‘ and I assure you he shall have as good Legs,  
 ‘ shall be as nervous, as discharged of Flesh,  
 ‘ and almost altogether as well shaped as his



‘ Sire, which I suppose to be either a *Barb* or a  
 ‘ *Spanish* Horse : Suffer again the other to run  
 ‘ all Winter in the Fields, until he be three  
 ‘ Years old, and he shall have his Head and  
 ‘ Neck big and thick, his Shoulders charged  
 ‘ with Flesh ; and shall, for his Stature and  
 ‘ Size, be a most lubberly and perfect Cart-  
 ‘ Horse, from whence you may observe the  
 ‘ Effects of dry Food, and warm Housing ;  
 ‘ and how much both the one and the other-  
 ‘ contribute to the Beauty of Horses.

A great  
 deal in the  
 Shape and  
 Beauty is  
 sometimes  
 owing to  
 the Food  
 or Man-  
 ner of  
 Feeding,  
 &c.

As concerning the Shape and Beauty of all  
 growing Creatures, there is, no doubt, a great  
 deal owing both to the particular Food, and  
 manner of Feeding, as well as to the Air,  
 Dressing and Management in other respects :  
 But the true Lineaments must be from the Sire  
 and Dam ; and what other Difference those  
 cause, is, in a great Measure, adventitious. It is  
 certain a dry Pasture is the best for all Horses ;  
 as the Grass in such Fields commonly affords  
 the truest and most solid Nourishment ; and the  
 Winter-Grass is, no doubt, the more foggy, as  
 it also abounds more with a cold viscid Moi-  
 sture, and thereby changes not only from hot  
 to cold, but from dry to moist ; so that those  
 Pastures which were dry in Summer put on  
 other Properties in Winter, and become more  
 or less wet, as the latter Season is more or less  
 Rainy : Wherefore if a Horse be suffered to  
 run abroad in Winter, it is almost the same as  
 grazing on the moistest Grounds.

The Grass which the Beginning of Summer  
 produces, is not only, as has been observed in  
 the 12th Chapter, cooling and refreshful to  
 all Horses, but likewise nourishing ; and the  
 Nourishment which it affords is also in some  
 Mea-



Measure solid; but in Winter the Grass loses its Strength and Virtue; and therefore, the Horses which run Abroad in Winter are perpetually feeding, and what they want in Quality they make up in Quantity: So that they keep all their Vessels continually gorged and full, which, no doubt, adds very much to the Augmentation of their Size and Bulk while they are young, and their Bodies relaxed: And this is also the Reason why the rankest Pastures commonly produce the largest Cattle of all Kinds.

All young Animals have their Bodies naturally relaxed, and their Vessels are then capable of being distended and enlarged; which is a necessary Disposition in them, until they are arrived at their full Growth. So that if they be fed much on those Things that afford but little Nourishment when they are young, it increases that Hunger which is also natural to their Nonage, whereby they are never satiated, but keep their Stomachs alwas charged; and while the Body in that lax State is perpetually receiving fresh Supplies, it may easily grow out of all manner of Shape. This is, no doubt, the Case of many young Horses, who notwithstanding they are of a fine delicate Breed, yet they lose much of their natural Shape, by being suffer'd to run both Summer and Winter at Grass: And this is the Reason why they become over-charged with Flesh; because that Kind of Feeding does not add to their true Nutriment so much as to the Increase of the Muscles. Grass in the proper Season is, no doubt, very necessary for all young Horses, and is the Food which is the fittest to bring them to their due Size and Proportion: For while they are young, and their Appetites vigo-



rous and strong; if they were then to be fed with Provender of any Kind, in Proportion to their Desire, they would soon be surfeited and rendered liable to Diseases; but that Grass which grows on wet Grounds, or the Winter-Grass, abounds with little or no Spirits, wherein a great deal of the true Nourishment consists; and therefore it must needs beget a viscid and indigested Chyle, which must also render those Horses, that are fed with it, sluggish, dull and unactive.

Young Horses that are constantly at Grass may be also injured by their Manner of Feeding, so as to become less beautiful than otherwise they would be: And it is, no doubt, in a great Measure owing to the constant Feeding with their Heads downwards, that some Horses become charged with Flesh about their Head and Neck, and grow heavy and thick about their Shoulders. How much particular Shapes are owing to particular Positions of Body, is sufficiently manifest in Man as well as in Horses. Some People grow crooked when they are put out young to sedentary Employments; and those that labour and carry Burdens commonly stoop before they are very old. The Hands of a labouring Man are also, for the most part, larger than the Hands of those who live at Ease; because their perpetual Action keeping all the Blood-Vessels constantly full, enlarges the Growth more than would have been, had they never toiled and laboured. In fine, whenever the Blood is habituated to flow into any Part in a more than ordinary Quantity; if this happens from any undue Position of Body in a young Animal, the Vessels in those Parts, by an over-great and continual Influx, will, no doubt,



doubt, in Time, be enlarged beyond what they ought to be; and whatever Disproportion that causes, will readily be accounted for the natural Shape: And this is an Inconveniency, to which all Animal Bodies may in their Youth be subject unto.

But yet there are some of the finest and most delicate Kind, who notwithstanding they be kept at Grass all the Time they are Colts, nevertheless retain that Beauty which is natural to them; or at least if they be rendered somewhat rough and mishapen, they will after two or three Years good Keeping become very beautiful. There is something both in the Shape and make of some Horses, that barring Accidents and Diseases, cannot be so altered as to be irrecoverable and beyond Remedy. Whether this be owing to the particular Soil they go upon, or to a moderate Appetite after Food; or some peculiar Sagacity, whereby they pick out that Kind of Food in their Pasture, which is most suitable to their Constitutions; I shall not determine: But of this there are many Instances, as well as of others that have been injured at Grass. And the Duke takes Notice, that young Mares or Fillies do not suffer so very much by running Abroad in Winter, as young Horses. But I can see no Reason for this Observation, other than that he has had fewer Instances of the one than the other: For the Bodies of Mares are more delicate and susceptible of Impressions of all Kinds than Horses, and may as easily be turned out of Shape; and therefore those who have Convenience, ought, as himself directs, to take up their young Mares in the same manner as their Horses.

Some Colts do not so easily lose their Shape and Beauty as others.



Colts, unless they have a great Number of them, which would be very Chargeable.

Horses of a mixed Kind, or those which are naturalized to our Climate, thrive very well at Grass for the Three or Four first Years of their Age; and many of them are afterwards strong, large and durable, and well enough suited to the Services required of them. But a Race which is immediately descended from Horses of a warmer Climate, ought in Reason be kept more delicately. They ought therefore never to run Abroad in Winter, but be kept as warm as possible: They should be fed on the best Hay, and while they are young their Corn should, notwithstanding the Duke seems to be indifferent about it, be either softened by boiling, or else dry'd till it be brittle, and may easily be broke. The Ancients were wont to dry all the Barley which they gave their Colts, because it was so tough they were not able to chew it, without spoiling their Teeth. Our Oats are indeed more easily ground; and there are many Colts which will eat them very fast, and without the least Injury; but there are others, who, no doubt, suffer by chewing of Oats while they are very young; though that may be easily attributed to some other Cause. *Johannes Taquetus* ascribes many of the Infirmities of the Eyes to this Error in feeding Colts; and indeed nothing is more likely to bring about such Effects. As the Action of the Jaws, when it happens to be over-laborious, strains the Muscles of the Eyes very much, whereby a more than ordinary Flux of Humours may easily be derived into them: And thus while they are young, their Blood viscid, and the most liable to Errors in Feeding, it may lay the Foundation of such



such Obstructions, as may never be removed. But we have already taken notice of this in our *Farrier's Guide*, where we have treated of the Diseases of the Eyes. To which we refer the Reader.

The Quantity of Provender may also be injurious to their Eyes, if it be too liberal; but Horses do not suffer so much by Quantity before they are backed and put to hard Labour, as afterwards; for then they are exposed to Chest-foundring, Molten Grease, and many other Accidents. But the Infirmities which follow upon over-full Feeding in Colts, are chiefly those of the Eyes; because of the Tenderness and Delicacy of those Parts, whereby they are rendered obnoxious to suffer, and become obstructed more than any other. Those Persons who have the Oversight of Colts ought therefore to have a particular Regard to their Eyes; and if there be the least Weakness perceivable upon full Feeding, they should forthwith be abridged; for then an Infirmary may be prevented, which will afterwards be hard to be removed.

Another Thing is also very necessary to the Preservation of all fine Colts; and that is, not to put them too early to labour after they are backed, and to use them with all the Gentleness in the World at the Time of Backing; for, without doubt, a great many Horses suffer by being rid while their Joints are flexible; and the Injuries arising from thence may not be soon perceived; yet nothing can contribute more to spoil the Shape of their Legs, and to render them liable to *Spavins*, *Curbs*, *Fardons*, *Windgals*, and all the other Train of Evils that happens afterwards to the Legs and Pasterns.

Plen-



Plentiful Feeding is more necessary to Horses while they are Colts, than at any other Time, to promote the Growth and Enlargement of their Bodies, which can only be brought to their full Stature by Food: Yet because they are under this Necessity, their Exercise should be very moderate and gentle for a considerable Time; and this may be more or less, as the Horse appears to be more or less hardy; but the more Ease and Liberty young Horses have, it is certainly to their Advantage until they are of a fit Age for Service; and therefore they should till then be turned out to Grass every Summer, at least till they be upwards of Six. This will be the likeliest Means not only to preserve them sound, but also to render them plump and beautiful. For it is easy to demonstrate that a Horse may irrecoverably suffer in his Shape and outward Beauty as well as in Strength, by being under-fed while he is young: And of the Two Extremes of Dieting young Horses, the worst is, the Want of proper Food and Nourishment.



THE





# THE INDEX.

**A.**  
**ACTION.** The Action of a Horse, a sure Way to judge of his Condition, Page 116. Cautions to be observed in this Particular, p. 117  
*Affections* of Horses, how far they may influence their Bodies, p. 63  
*Air*, its Effects, p. 50  
 The Air and Soil fit for a Stable, p. 88. See Stable.  
*Ancients*, some Remarks of theirs, concerning the Horses of different Kingdoms, p. 34  
*Antimony* after Grass, useful to some Horses, p. 189  
*Art.* Comparison between the Works of Art and Nature, with respect to the true Shape of a Horse, p. 22

**B.**  
**Barley** much used in Spain and Italy, p. 71  
**Beans**, A Food which affords great Nourishment, p. 74. In what Manner they are to be used, *ibid.*  
**Breeding.** The Way of raising a Breed of fine Horses, p. 210. Qualifications of a right Stallion, p. 212. What is to be understood by hereditary Distempers in a Stallion, p. 213. A Stallion ought to be free from all such Distempers, *ib.* Virgil's Description of a right Stallion, p. 215. What Mares are best

to breed on, *ibid.* The Manner of Feeding the Stallion and Mare, p. 216, 217. The Exercise proper for a Stallion, p. 219. The properest Age to breed in, p. 209. What Mares a Horse may cover at one Season, *ibid.* The right Manner of covering, *ibid.* and 221. The ordering of Mares after Covering, p. 222. How to assist Mares in Foaling, p. 223, 224  
*Bridle*, and other Accoutrements for a Journey, p. 127

**C.**  
**Capacity** of Horses: Some Observations from thence, necessary to prevent ill Habits p. 45  
**Colour** of Horses: Some Prognosticks to be taken from thence, though not always to be depended on, p. 2  
**Covering** Horses in the Stable; the Usefulness thereof, p. 95. Cautions concerning the Cloathing and Covering of Horses, p. 96  
**Currying** and Dressing, the Benefit and Use thereof, p. 94

**D.**  
**Diet.** A mixed Diet, and Change of Diet, sometimes beneficial to Horses, p. 75. The right Dieting upon a Journey, of great Importance, p. 137. See *Journey*. The Diet of a Running Horse. See *Race-Horse*.  
*Dis-*



*Diseases* may happen upon the Retention or Emission of the Seed, p. 62

*Drink.* When a Horse has too great Inclination to drink, how he ought to be managed, p. 145

*Draught,* or drawing Horses, how they are to be ordered, p. 154

The *Dung* oftentimes discovers the State of a Horse's Body, p. 115. How to know by the *Dung* when a Horse is in Health or otherwise, p. 172

## E.

**E**ating of much Hay causes Horses to be big-belly'd, p. 82

*Great Eaters* how they are to be managed, p. 77

Things *Excreted* or retained, p. 58

All superfluous *Excretions* for the most part proceed from some Error in the other *Non-Naturals*, p. 50

*Exercise* and Rest, p. 52. Cautions concerning Exercise, p. 53. It quickens the Motion of the Blood, and thereby conduces greatly to Health, p. 54. Few Conditions which do not require Exercise, p. 99. No Exercise profitable upon a full Stomach, p. 107. The ill Effects of Exercise when it is too violent, p. 55

## F

**F**eeding, some general Cautions about it, p. 51. The particular Method of Feeding Horses while they stand at hard Meat, p. 100. *Solleysell's* Method of Feeding, p. 103. Observations upon it, p. 105. A proper Method of Feeding, a

great Means of preventing Accidents, p. 110

*Floor* of a Stable. See *Stable*.

*Fitches* sometimes given among a Horse's Provender. p. 75

*Food,* Some Observations concerning the Quantity thereof, p. 76. The different Kinds of Food, p. 66. Too much Food causes an over Plenitude, and occasions Surfeits, p. 51. The Tempers of Horses affected by their Food, p. 29. The Food of Running Horses. See *Race-Horses*.

## G.

**G**alloping Horses after their Water justly condemned by *Solleysell*, p. 107. The particular Inconveniencies thereof, p. 108

*Girth,* how it should be placed, p. 127

*Grass-Horses,* p. 179. Cases wherein Grass is prejudicial, p. 180, 181. The Grass proper to most young Horses, p. 182. For such as have lain under divers lingering Indispositions, *ibid.* For those subject to Costiveness, *ibid.* For some Kinds of Lameness, p. 183. For Gourdiness of a long Standing. The Reasons of this at large, p. 184, & *seq.* Antimony useful to some Horses after Grass, p. 189, 204. See *Troop-Horses*.

## H.

**H**abits, what they are, p. 38. Good Habit of Body described, p. 39. For the most part natural, *ibid.* Habits relating to the Actions of Horses, p. 40. Young Horses apt to imbibe ill Habits, p. 42. Bad Habits often owing to their Keepers, p. 43. Most of Horses



Horse's Actions are habitual,  
p. 41

Hay, different according to the  
different Soils on which it  
grows, p. 67. That which  
grows on the high Meadows  
commonly the best, p. 68

Horses, the Means to bring them  
under Subjection various, p. 48.  
Young Horses often devour  
more Food, than they are able  
to digest, p. 76. The same  
sometimes happens to those who  
are very old, *ibid.* Horses  
which sweat and perspire much,  
require frequent Feeding, p. 77.  
Large Horses not always the  
greatest Eaters, p. 79. Mang-  
ling of Hay oftentimes a Vice  
in Feeding, p. 84. For the most  
part caused by surfeiting, *ibid.*  
Some Horses more greedy when  
they Rest, than when they La-  
bour, p. 98

Draught Horses, p. 154

Coach Horses, how they should  
be ordered, p. 155

Horses which carry Burdens, p.  
157

## I.

**I**nstinct and Sagacity of Horses,  
p. 26. The Instinct of all  
brute Creatures tends chiefly to  
their Preservation, p. 27

Journey. The necessary Prepa-  
rations for a Journey, p. 141.  
A Horse that has had little Ex-  
ercise should be rid moderately  
in the Beginning of his Jour-  
ney, p. 129. Some Horses apt  
to thirst in hot Weather, while  
upon the Road, p. 139. To  
prevent the Accidents arising  
from thence, p. 140. How a  
Horse should be water'd upon  
a Journey, p. 144. Staling on  
a Journey, p. 146. Dunging  
often, or Costiveness, p. 147.

Washing Horses upon a Jour-  
ney, p. 148. The rubbing the  
Legs, p. 149. Cloathing *152.*  
The Feet to be carefully looked  
to, p. 135.

## K.

**K**eeper. The Qualifications  
of a good Keeper, p. 43.  
The Knowledge of the Animal  
OEconomy necessary to such Per-  
sons, p. 44.

## L.

**L**EGS and Feet, what Care  
ought to be taken of them.  
See Journey.

The Life included in the Beauty  
of all Animals, p. 24

Litter. The Eating of Litter not  
always a Vice, p. 85. The  
Cause why some Horses eat  
their Litter, *ibid.*

## M.

**M**anage. Horses in the Ma-  
nage, how they are to be  
ordered, p. 158. How they are  
to be prepared so as to avoid  
Accidents, p. 161. Their Ca-  
pacity and Inclinations to be  
studied, p. 163. The Accidents  
to which they are exposed, with  
the Method to prevent them,  
p. 163. Lessons in the Manage  
of great Importance, p. 47.  
No Horse capable of attaining  
them all to Perfection, *ibid.*

Manger. See Stable.

Mares suffer more by Staling of-  
ten on a Journey than Horses,  
p. 146, 147. The Reasons  
thereof, *ibid.* Breeding Mares.  
See Breeding.

Marks and Colour of Horses in  
common with that Variety and  
Distinction which is in all the  
other Works of Nature, p. 4.  
The



The Marks most approved or  
disliked, p. 5.

## N.

**D** UKE of *Newcastl.* what  
he observes concerning the  
Shape of Horses, p. 19. His  
Opinion of *Barbs* and *Spanish*  
Horses, p. 35. The ridiculous  
Observation of Planets in  
Breeding of Horses, by him  
justly exposed, p. 310. His  
Manner and Directions for Co-  
vering, p. 221  
*Non-Naturals*, what they are,  
p. 49

## O.

**O** ATS, which are the best,  
p. 72. What their Effects  
are, *ibid.* Black Oats general-  
ly prefer'd, *ibid.*  
Occupation of a Groom, p. 43

## P.

**P** EASE afford good Nourish-  
ment when they are old,  
p. 75  
*Plenitude* and Surfeiting often the  
Effects of over feeding, p. 51

## Q.

**T** H E exact *Quantity* of a  
Horse's Food, not easily  
to be determined, p. 98  
*Qualifications* of a right Stallion.  
See *Breeding*.

## R.

**R** Ace Horses. The previous  
State of Body to be en-  
quired into, p. 165. They  
should neither be over much  
charged with Flesh, nor too  
Lean, p. 166. Their particular  
Method of Diet, p. 168. Their  
proper Scourings, *ibid.* See  
also p. 173. Their Exercise,

p. 169. Cautions to be ob-  
served in the Exercise of run-  
ning Horses, p. 172. The  
Signs to know when a running  
Horse is brought into good Or-  
der, p. 176. The Bread and  
other Food particularly appro-  
priated to them, p. 177. Their  
Dressing, p. 178  
*Rack*, its best Position. See *Stable*.  
*Retention* of the Urine or Dung,  
*&c.* To what it is owing,  
p. 58  
*Rest*, necessary to repair the  
Wastes made by Exercise, p.  
57. How Horses ought to be  
fed while they rest, p. 96  
*Roads*. Some Observations con-  
cerning the different Roads in  
Travelling, p. 133  
*Rubbing* the Legs, of great im-  
portance. See *Journey*.  
*Rye* seldom used but among other  
Provender, p. 75

## S.

**S** Addle, how it should be or-  
dered for a Journey, p. 124  
*Scourings*, for Race-Horses. See  
*Race Horses*.  
*Seed*. Its Retention or Emission,  
how profitable or hurtful, p.  
58. Seed of Animals not to  
be accounted among the ordi-  
nary Secretions, p. 61  
*Shape* of Horses. Those which  
are well shaped are commonly  
good, p. 8. The true Shape of  
particular Parts described, p. 9.  
The Duke of *Newcastle's* Op-  
inion, concerning the Shape of  
Horses, p. 19  
*Sleep*. Its various Effects, p. 57  
*Snaffles* chiefly used in this King-  
dom upon a Journey, p. 128  
*Stable*. The Air and Soil fit for  
a Stable, p. 88. Of what Size  
it ought to be, *ibid.* The Light  
proper for a Stable, according  
to



# I N D E X.

V

to *Vigetius*, p. 89. How the Windows should be contrived, *ibid.* The Opinion of *Solleysell* and *Palladius*, concerning the Windows of a Stable, p. 90. How the Racks should be placed, *ibid.* The Manger, p. 91. The Floor, *ibid.*  
*Staling* on a Journey. See *Journey*.

*Stallion*. See *Breeding*.

*Stiffness* after Riding, the properest Method to remove it, p. 130

*Straw*. Its Use in Food, p. 70

*Sweat*. The Indications taken from thence, of great Use to know the State of a Horse's Body, p. 117. Horses newly come from Grass, are most apt to sweat, *ibid.* The Method to recover that Indisposition, *ibid.* When the Sweat runs off, and does not rise into a Foam, it denotes a good State of Body, p. 176.

## T.

**T**empers and Inclinations of Horses exceeding various, p. 27. Their Tempers change and alter, p. 29. They may be affected by their Food. See *Food*. Their good or bad Tempers often owing to their Management while they are but Colts, p. 30. Different Tempers peculiar to the Horses of different Kingdoms, p. 33. The Temper to be pretty much known from the Countenance and Aspects, p. 36. Trial the surest Way to know a Horse's Temper and Goodness, p. 28.

The Knowledge of a Horse's Temper may be a great Means of his Preservation. p. 27.

*Ticking* in a Horse very inconvenient, p. 83. For the most part in ill Habit, p. 84

*Travelling Horses*. See *Journey*.

*Troop Horses*. The Qualifications necessary in a Troop Horse, p. 192. How those ought to be ordered, which are bought of the Jockies, p. 194. How those are to be ordered, which are bought out of a Team or Waggon, p. 195. The Cautions necessary before they be put into the Manage, p. 196. Grass of great Benefit to Troop Horses, p. 198. Several Cautions concerning the grazing of Troop Horses, p. 199. In what manner they are to be ordered after Grass, p. 202. Their particular Method of Feeding, p. 203. Their Water and Airings, p. 204. *Antimony* of great Use to Troop Horses, *ibid.* The manner of giving them *Antimony*, p. 205. To prevent the Accidents arising from the Use of *Antimony*, p. 206. The Feet of Troop Horses to be carefully ordered, p. 208

## V.

**V**ices in Feeding, p. 83

*Viciousness* in Horses sometimes Natural, and sometimes Habitual, p. 40

*Virgil's* Description of a right *Stallion*, p. 215. His Method of Feeding the Stallion and Stud-Mares, p. 217

*Walking*



W.

**W**alking long without frequent Feeding, exposes Horses to Faintness, p. 201  
**Watching.** Its Effects on the Animal Body, p. 57  
**Water,** which the best, p. 93.  
 The Method of giving Horses their Water, p. 109  
**Wheat** sometimes given to Horses for their Provender, p. 73. It

is of a viscid and glutinous Nature; and therefore nourishes much: But with Difficulty goes thro' the first Passages, *ibid.*

Y.

**Y**oung Horses frequently surfeited with too much Food.  
 See *Horses.*



F I N I S.



